

ATTACK AND DEFENCE (E/A) OFFENSE AND DEFENSE di`fens      `ã~fens      `di~fens	stenclausen@hotmail.co.uk
<b>201</b> The academy has a <b>football</b> E/A <b>soccer team</b> .	* fodbold-      * hold
At the moment, their <b>defence</b> is stronger than their <b>attack</b> .	* forsvar / -(s)spil      * angreb / -(s)spil
( A: their <b>defense</b> is stronger than their <b>offense</b> . )	* =      * =
As their attack has ( been ) <b>weakened</b> by the loss of some	* blive svækket ( vi&t )
<b>key players</b> , they hope to be able to <b>reinforce</b> their team.	* nøglespiller      * forstærke ngt.
Last year, the team <b>was upset</b> by the 12th -ranked team.	* blive overraskende besejret af ng.
Being an <b>upsetting</b> defeat, it was a major <b>upset</b>	* overraskende      * overraskelse
when the <b>visiting team</b> , the lowest-ranked team,	* udeholdet
defeated the <b>home team</b> . ( * look at page 300 )	* besejre >      * hjemme-      * holdet
<b>10</b> The players were <b>upset</b> about the defeat.	* rystet / ulykkelig over ngt.
They felt <b>upset that</b> they had been defeated, but a look	* ... at -
from their <b>coach decided</b> them not to make any excuses.	* træner      * få ng. til at bestemme / beslutte sig til at -
The team <b>start(s) work on</b> ( improving ) their ( its ) attack.	* begynde ( på ) arbejdet med ( at - ) ngt.
<b>Working to reinforce</b> the team's attack,	* arbejde på at -      * forstærke ngt.
the <b>coach</b> is continually <b>at work on</b> ( doing ) the job.	* træner      * i færd / gang med ( at - ) ngt.
Working to <b>put</b> ( ) <b>together</b> a strong team,	* sammensætte ( et hold )
the coach looks for talented <b>attackers</b> and <b>defenders</b> .	* angriber      * forsvarer
A number of <b>decisive</b> factors <b>decide whether</b> a hopeful	* muligt afgørende      * bestemme hvorvidt -
new player is good at <b>playing in attack</b> or <b>in defence</b> (E)	* spille i angreb (-et)      * ... forsvar (-et)
<b>20</b> ( A: to play <b>offense</b> or play <b>on defense</b> ) and eventually	* =
<b>decide</b> who and what the coach <b>decides</b> (up)on.	* bestemme hvxx      * bestemme / beslutte sig > for ng. / til ngt.
As a <b>decided advantage</b> and a <b>deciding</b> factor,	* decideret / afgjort      * fordel      * afgørende bestemmende
a talent shows great <b>team`spirit</b> and that <b>decides</b> the coach.	* holdånd      * få ng. til at bestemme / beslutte sig
Some teams are <b>defensive</b> , with a <b>defensive</b> play.	* forsvarsindstillet      * =
The team has often been <b>defending champion</b> .	* forsvarende mestre
It will be <b>defending</b> the <b>title</b> at next month's <b>championship</b> ,	* forsvare >      * titlen      * mesterskab
as their <b>supporters</b> E/A <b>fans</b> will <b>revel</b> in <b>cheering</b> ( ) `on it.	* tilhænger / fan      * slå sig løs med at -      * heppe på ng.
They look forward to the academy's defence of the <b>cup</b> .	* pokal
They <b>work on</b> a <b>maintained / sustained attack</b> .	* arbejde på >      * vedholdende
<b>30</b> <b>Working at an offensive strategy</b> , they <b>aim to</b> build up	* arbejde på > * offensiv      * strategi * satse på at - angrebs- ( præget )
an <b>offensive</b> team as they <b>gamble on offensive</b> play.	* =      * satse på ngt.      * =
They <b>count on being on</b> the <b>offensive</b> most of the game.	* satse på at -      * være i offensiven / angreb
A mixture of skill and luck <b>decides</b> the outcome of the match.	* ngt. afgører / bestemmer ngt.
The academy's team <b>defend</b> well throughout the game.	* forsvare
Showing a <b>decided change for the better</b> , their attack	* afgørende      * forandring      * til det bedre
<b>cuts through</b> the <b>defence</b> and <b>scores</b> ( the <b>winning goal</b> ).	* trænge igennem > * forsvaret      * score > * vindermaal
The players decide to <b>celebrate</b> the championship.	* fejre ngt.
They <b>decide among themselves</b> how to <b>celebrate</b> .	* bestemme selv hvxx      * feste
A player <b>decides for himself whether</b> to bring a partner.	* =

<b>202 HUMAN RIGHTS</b> include <b>defensible administration</b>	* forsvarlig	* administration / forvaltning af >
of <b>justice</b> by means of defensible civil, criminal, military law,	* retfærdighed	* = * lov givning
a defensible civil, criminal and military justice system,	( = retspleje )	
and a defensible criminal code, and prison service / system.	* =	* retspleje- * system
<b>Capital punishment</b> and other <b>corporal punishment</b>	* kriminal- * kodeks, regelsamling	* ~ fængsels- ~ straffelov væsen
are <b>indefensible</b> and should be <b>banned</b> by <b>statute ( law )</b> .	* dødsstraf	* korporlig afstraffelse
Politicians who are passionate <b>proponents</b> and <b>defenders</b>	( moralsk ) * forbyde ngt.	* vedtaget og nedskreven lov ( -givning )
of human rights also have to <b>defend</b> ( the rights of ) a minority.	* fortaler for ngt.	* forsvarer af ngt.
<b>Skilled at / in verbal</b> self-defence, politicians are skilled	* forsvarer ngt. ( forfægte ngt. )	
<b>10 at / in defending</b> themselves <b>against criticism</b> and <b>critics</b> .	* dygtig til / øvet i ngt.	* verbal * ... >
New <b>legislation</b> in many countries <b>makes it</b> an <b>offence to</b>	* til / i at -	* forsvarer sig mod * kritik * kritiker
<b>discriminate on grounds of</b> race, sex or religion.	* lovgivning	* gøre det til en forbrydelse at -
<b>Discrimination ( against people ) on</b> the grounds of race,	* forskelsbehandle	* på grundlag af ngt.
gender or religion has become a <b>statutory offence</b> .	* forskelsbehandling ( mod ng.)	* =
Some <b>offensive</b> and <b>offending statute-barred paragraphs</b>	* ifølge vedtaget lov	* forbrydelse
had to be <b>deleted ( from statute law )</b> .	* fornærmende	* = * lovstridige * paragraf
Several <b>deletions</b> must be made to the <b>discriminatory</b> law.	krænkende, stødende	
So in these countries it is an <b>offence to discriminate</b>	* slette ngt. ( fra ngt. )	
<b>against women in favour of</b> men.	* sletning i ngt.	* diskriminerende
<b>20 The legislation makes</b> racial, sex(ual) and religious	* forbrydelse	* forskelsbehandle >
<b>discrimination an offence by</b> statute law.	* imod ng.	* til fordel for ng.
Yet it's still often necessary to <b>conduct a defence of</b>	* gøre ngt. til >	
<b>women's rights</b> and fight against <b>discriminatory practices</b> .	* diskrimination	* en forbrydelse * ifølge
As passionate defenders of women's rights, women	forskelsbehandling	
often have to write to the media <b>defending themselves</b> .	* føre et forsvar for ngt.	
They have to <b>defend themselves from</b> sexists	* kvinders rettigheder	* diskriminerende * sædvaner
and defending themselves against sexist accusations.	*	
Some women learn <b>self-defence</b> in order to <b>defend</b>	* forsvarer sig	
<b>themselves; defend themselves from</b> violent <b>sex offenders</b>	* holde ng. på afstand	* sexist
<b>30 and defend themselves against</b> sexual assault and <b>rape</b> .	* forsvarer sig imod	
Even if there's not much <b>precedent for</b> women joining	* selvforsvar	* forsvarer >
the armed <b>forces</b> , their number is increasing.	* sig * ~ holde ng. på afstand	* seksualforbryder
Even a shy, <b>inoffensive</b> young girl may <b>go into</b>	* ... mod ngt.	* voldtægt
<b>the ( armed ) forces</b> E/E ( <b>armed</b> ) <b>services</b> .	* præcedens / fortilfælde for ngt.	
Of course most military <b>installations</b> formerly had had	*	
no need of any special <b>facilities</b> for women.	* uanmassende	* gå ind i >
So everywhere a <b>neat</b> ( simple but clever ) <b>solution</b>	skikkelig	
that would not <b>offend</b> female soldiers was <b>looked for</b> .	* de væbnede styrker	
	* installation	
	* facilitet, bekvemmelighed	
	* fiks	* løsning
	* krænke ng.	* lede efter / søge <

<b>203</b> Even a <b>peaceful</b> and <b>peaceable</b> democracy today	* fredeligt	* fredsommeligt
must have a <b>defence</b> to <b>defend</b> its territory and independence.	* ( militært ) forsvar	* forsvare ng.
In Parliament, <b>defence</b> (U) is currently <b>under debate</b> .	* forsvar	* til debat
Depending on the <b>situation relating to foreign policy</b> ,	* den udenrigspolitiske situation	
<b>cuts</b> or rises in <b>defence spending</b> are being considered.	* nedskæring i ng.	* forsvarsudgifter
As the Government is worried about a military threat from	*	
a hostile country, it considers <b>defensive preparedness</b>	* forsvarsberedskab	
in the form of a <b>plan to augment defence expenditure</b> /	* plan om at -	* forøge ng.
a <b>plan for</b> (an) <b>augmentation of</b> expenditure on defence.	* ... for ng.	* forøgelse af ng.
<b>10</b> <b>Worried about</b> a threat to peace in the region,	* bekymret om ng.	
the Government has to <b>decide between</b> negotiation and war.	* træffe en beslutning / vælge mellem ng.	
As it <b>decided against</b> ( <b>waging</b> ) (a) <b>war</b> in the first place,	* beslutte sig imod ( at ) ng.	* føre krig
it <b>decides in favour of</b> ( <b>opening</b> ) <b>negotiations</b> .	* ... for ( at ) ng.	* ( åbne op for )
Having decided to enter <b>into negotiations with</b> the enemy,	* træde ind i forhandlinger med ng.	* forhandlinger
the government <b>launches a diplomatic offensive</b> .	* iværksætte ng.	* diplomatisk offensiv / kampagne
<b>Diplomacy regrettably fails</b> so having <b>decided (up)on</b>	* diplomati	* beklageligvis
an <b>all-out</b> war, the Government decides to <b>augment</b> the army,	* total ( krig )	* mislykkes
and <b>launch</b> a major <b>military offensive</b> on January.	* igangsætte ng.	* beslutte sig for >
<b>Reckoning on</b> an <b>expenditure of</b> more than £ 100,000,	* regne med ng.	* militær offensiv / angreb
<b>20</b> the <b>Chief of Defence</b> has secret talks with	* forsvarschef	* udgift på ng.
the <b>Minister of Defence</b> about an <b>augmentation</b> of the army.	* forsvarsminister	
The <b>Defence Minister</b> and the <b>spokesmen on defence</b>	* <<	* forøgelse af ng.
talk about their <b>defence power</b> and <b>defence capability</b> ;	* forsvarsstyrke	* forsvarsordfører
their <b>capability to defend</b> / <b>of</b> defending themselves.	* evne til at -	* forsvarsevne
The government has <b>all-out support of</b> the Parliament,	* ubetinget	
but <b>all in all</b> the decision is likely to <b>distress</b> a lot of people.	* alt i alt	* støtte fra ng.
<b>Quite so</b> , the prospects of war <b>upset</b> a lot people;	* alt taget i betragtning	* forurolige / irritere / ærgre ng.
people get <b>anxious</b> , <b>annoyed</b> , <b>worried</b> , and <b>unhappy</b> .	* =	
Causing much <b>anxiety</b> , <b>emotional</b> and economic <b>upset</b> ,	* ængstelig	* irriteret, ærgret
<b>30</b> it is the cause of much <b>expenditure</b> of emotion.	* bekymret, urolig	* bekymret
Warfare <b>upsets</b> the balance of the economy,	* ængstelse	* bekymring
and <b>acts of war upsets</b> the <b>balance</b> of the environment.	* følelsesmæssig	* ubehag, bekymring
A <b>climate</b> of political <b>confusion</b> and <b>upset</b> would only	* forbrug af ng.	* skuffelse
<b>reinforce</b> the country's possible economic <b>decline</b> .	* forstyrre / -rykke >	
<b>It is asserted that</b> the economy will survive a possible	* krigshandling	* balancen i ng.
<b>upset</b> in prices if <b>prices</b> should <b>rocket</b> / <b>soar</b> or <b>nosedive</b> .	* klima af >	* =
The <b>responsibility for</b> the <b>administration of</b> the Govern>	* forstærke ng.	* uro
ment's <b>decisions lies with</b> the <b>Ministry of Defence</b> (E)	* det hævdes / påstås at -	* nedtur
or the <b>Department of Defense</b> (A).	* uro i ng.	
	* priser	* stige kraftigt
	* ansvar for >	* styrtdykke
	* beslutning	* ligger hos >
	*	* forsvarsministerium
	*	

<b>204</b> Even if it takes a huge <b>expenditure</b> of energy ( time and effort ), the Ministry takes steps to <b>reinforce</b> the armed forces, and <b>reinforce</b> their military positions along the borders.	* forbrug af ngt. * forstærke ngt. - `få~s * =
Some <b>military works</b> and <b>fortifications</b> are built as a <b>defence</b> ( <b>against</b> enemy attack ).	* militæranlæg * fæstningsværk * som forsvar mod ngt.
Considered <b>indefensible</b> , some old <b>defence works</b> are in <b>urgent need</b> of <b>structural reinforcement</b> .	* ~ umulig at forsvare * forsvarsanlæg * ~ have > * pres- * behov for > * bygnings- * forstærk- serende mæssig ning
Buildings, bridges and other <b>structures</b> are <b>reinforced</b> to <b>stand up to</b> / <b>resist</b> / <b>withstand attack</b> .	* bygningværk * forstærke ngt. * modstå ...
<b>10 Reinforced</b> `concrete contains steel bars, strands mesh etc. to <b>absorb tensile</b> and <b>shearing stresses</b> .	* armeret * beton * indeholde > * stål * stang * stiver * net- * opfange / * stræk- * forskydende * belast- værk dæmpe ngt. mæssig vridende ninger * rangere i > * toppen * i lejren
The colonel <b>ranks at</b> the <b>top</b> in the <b>camp</b> as he <b>outranks</b> or <b>ranks</b> (A) all other officers in the battalion. ( the lieutenant colonel, majors, captains and lieutenants )	* rangere over ng. * = * * rangere øverst i > * lejrenhed
The colonel <b>ranks</b> (A) <b>at the camp</b> . He <b>smokes rank</b> cigars to <b>calm</b> / <b>soothe</b> himself, and <b>soothe</b> / <b>relieve</b> ( the ) <b>pain</b> from an <b>offending</b> tooth.	* ryge > * ildelugtende * berolige ng. * dulme > * smerte * generende / irriterende * genere / irritere ng.
The smell <b>offends</b> everybody who comes near him. Pain easily causes <b>emotional</b> `upset so <b>standing up</b> , <b>20</b> he <b>upsets</b> a glass which <b>hits</b> the <b>floor</b> with a <b>smash</b> .	* følelsesmæssig forstyrrelse * rejse sig / være stående * vælte ngt. * ramme > * gulv * smadring * indtage >
The companies in the camp <b>take up</b> a ( strong ) <b>defensive position</b> to <b>defend</b> the border.	* forsvarsstilling * forsvare ngt. * forsvarsmiddel mod > * kampvogn
Some weapons are a purely <b>defensive measure against</b> <b>tank</b> attacks. <b>Prepared to go all-out on</b> the <b>battlefield</b> / <ground, the headquarters <b>prepare for</b> the <b>final offensive</b> .	* ~ bruge alle kræfter * på slagmarken * afgørende angreb / fremrykning
The troops <b>prepare to go on</b> ( to ) the <b>offensive</b> . Being <b>well prepared augments</b> the soldiers' <b>confidence</b> . <b>Prepared for</b> an <b>all-out</b> offensive,	* forberede sig på at - * gå til angreb * vel- / godt forberedt * ( for-) øge > * ( selv-) tillid * forberedt på ngt.
<b>30</b> the troops are <b>prepared to take</b> the <b>offensive</b> , and start attacking the enemy before they attack them. It's difficult to <b>defend against</b> an <b>all-out</b> attack.	* forberedt på at - * tage offensiven * * af fuld styrke altomfattende * opstille > * styrker * deling
The colonel <b>draws up</b> his <b>forces</b> , <b>platoon</b> after platoon, in <b>offensive positions</b> outside the camp.	* i > * offensiv * position ~ angrebsstilling * bombe...
An <b>air offensive</b> and a <b>bombing offensive</b> launched before a <b>ground attack force</b> the enemy <b>onto the defensive</b> .	* luftoffensiv * landangreb * tvinge ng. * i forsvarsstilling
The <b>ground forces</b> will need <b>all-out support summoned</b> / <b>mobilized</b> / <b>mustered</b> by the <b>transportation corps</b> (pl.)	* landstyrker * altomfattende * støtte * samlet sammen * mønstret * forsyningsstyrkerne kå~s

**205** A **squad** is send out to **reconnoitre** ( **enemy territory** ).

Afraid of being **harassed** / **harried** by the enemy, the squad  
`harêst / hê`rast

**scout** the area **for information on** / **about** the enemy.

The scouts have to live under **primitive** conditions.

The body has natural **defence mechanisms** to **protect** it  
**from** danger and diseases.

Normaly the skin and the **mucous`membranes**  
`mju~kês  
**defend** the body **from** from **microorganisms**; **microbes**  
maikrêu`â~gênizênz  
or **germs** such as **bacteria** (sg: bacterium ) and (a) **virus**.

**10** The **immune system** is the body's **defence against**  
**infection(s)** and it **defends** the body **against** disease.

The soldiers **have** an **up'set`stomach**.

When they have to find food **in the wild** to **sustain** them,  
the food sometimes **upsets** their **stomach** so the soldiers  
-`-`-  
**suffer from** an **stomach`upset** for some time.

When the scouts **set up** / **pitch** / **make camp**,  
they are careful not to **camp** in an **indefensible site**;  
a **campsite** / <ground **defenceless against** attacks.

The soldiers have to **defend** themselves **from the cold**.

**20** Their **sleeping bags**, **reinforced** to stand up to / resist /  
withstand **rough** ground, **defend** them **from** the cold.

All night long a couple of **sentries guard** the camp **in turn**  
to **defend** the camp **from nocturnal** dangers,  
nâk`tê~nl  
and **defend** it **against** sudden **nightly** attacks.

Having to **accustom themselves** to **crude language**  
female soldiers **become** / **get accustomed to** ( listening to )  
ê`kûstemd  
speech that contains words that many people find **offensive**.

Many jokes tend to **reinforce** gender / sexual **stereotyping**.

Even if they **get** / **are used** to ( listening to ) **crude** jokes

**30** that are **offensive** to women, the corporal's **steamy** jokes  
are still **deeply offensive** to the female soldiers.

**Inside** ( their head / mind ), deep **inside** ( A& of ) them,  
they **fume at** / **over** his **abusive** and **scornful** remarks  
as they **fume about** his **improper gender bias**. ( Look at  
page 300 )

His remarks and behaviour are **offensively discriminatory**.  
-`skri -

One night when two female soldiers are on **sentry duty**,  
the corporal **wakes up** and starts **jumping on** /A& **at** them,  
**letting** ( ) **loose** a **string** of accusations.

\* patrulje \* udspejde / rekognoscere ( fjendeland )  
trop

\* udsætte ng. for gentagne angreb  
( chikanere / forulempe ng. )

\* udspionere ngt. for > \* information /  
oplysninger om ngt.

\* primitiv

\* forsvarsmekanisme \* beskytte ( kroppen ) >

\* ~ mod ( farer / sygdom )

\* slimhinde

\* beskytte ngt. mod \* mikroorganisme \* & mikrobe

\* = \* bakterie \* virus

\* immunsystem \* forsvar mod

\* infektion \* forsvare ngt. mod  
smitte

\* få / have dårlig mave

\* i den vilde natur \* holde ng. i live

\* give dårlig mave

\* lide af ... \* mave- \* forstyrrelse  
~ maveonde

\* ~ slå > \* lejr

\* slå / ligge i lejr \* umulig at forsvare \* sted, plads  
beliggenhed

\* lejrplads \* forsvarsløs

\* beskytte sig mod ngt. \* kulden

\* sovepose \* forstærke ngt. \* modstå ngt.

\* grov \* beskytte ng. mod ngt.

\* vagtpost \* bevogte / \* efter tur  
beskytte ng&t.

\* beskytte ngt. mod \* natlig

\* forsvare ngt. mod \* natlig

\* vænne sig til ngt. \* grov \* sprogbrug

\* være vant til ngt.

\* fornærmende  
krænkende, stødende  
\* forstærke

\* stereotypetegning  
klicheprægning  
\* grov  
rå

\* blive vant til ngt.

\* fornærmende  
krænkende, stødende  
\* dybt ... overfor ng.

\* inden i ng.

\* ose af vrede / \* fornærmende \* foragtende  
vredes over ngt.

\* ... over ngt. \* upassende \* kønspartiskhed  
utilstedelig

\* fornærmende \* diskriminerende  
krænkende, stødende  
\* vagtjeneste

\* vågne \* overfuse ng.

\* slippe > løs \* stribe af ( beskyldninger )

**206** The female soldiers **get** very **offended** as the corporal **lets fly** ( **at** them ) ( **with** a stream / torrent of **abuse** )

wrongfully accusing them of **sleeping on duty**.

Very **offended** by his **insults** and **false accusation**, they **feel** deeply **offended at** his **pouring / heaping** abuse and **scorn on** them and their abilities as soldeirs.

The sergeant seems to **turn a deaf ear to** the female soldiers and their **grouses about** being **sexually harassed**.

Saying there's nothing to **grouse about**, the sergeant goes **10** on, ' **There's no point in getting upset about it**, and you should not **upset** yourselves **about** the corporal's behaviour.

The female soldiers, nevertheless, **feel** very **upset**.

**Upset about** the corporal's **disdainful** behaviour, they are **upset at / by** his **contemptuous offensiveness**.

They are **upset that** some officers **connive at / in** it.  
kê`naiv

The female soldiers are **upset with** the corporal as **it upsets** them **to** think of how he **had** the **game all to himself**.

' **It upsets** us **that** the sergeant **turns a blind eye** ( **to it** ) and **turns a deaf ear to** us, ' the female soldiers **grouse**.

**20** The experience **reinforces** their **sense of** being in an **exposed position**.

If someone is a victim of discrimination and **harassment**, the emotional **`upset** can affect them for a long time.

The sergeant has to **make a decision on / about** a mission, and **take a dicision as to who** to **send on** the **mission**.

Unluckily, as his **choice falls on** the two female soldiers, the sergeant's decision **upsets** the corporal's plan for a **heroic** mission, **accomplished** by a troop of male soldiers **having** the **manly virtues** of **courage** and strenght.  
`kûrid§

**30** The sergent's order **upsets** the **`apple cart**.

**Left to himself in the company of** just two women is an **insult to** the corporal which **upsets** him totally.

One morning, after they have **broken / struck camp**, and the corporal is **leading the way**, he, in **desperation** ( of the **wasted opportunity** ) **makes** the troop **lose** their **`way**.

Then, as soon as he **sees** his **chance to** disappear, he hides and **sneaks / creeps away once** the **unsuspecting** female soldiers are **out of sight**.  
ûnsê`spekting

\* blive fornærmet  
krænket / stødt  
\* gå amok ( overfuse ng. ) ( med ngt. ) \* fornærmelse  
\* sove på vagten  
\* krænket af / \* fornærmelser \* falsk \* anklage  
stødt over ngt.  
\* føle sig ( dybt ) ... af ng. \* dænge > \* =  
\* foragt over ng. / ngt.  
( overdænge ng. / ngt. med ... )  
\* vende det døde øre til ng. / ngt.  
\* klager over ngt. \* ~ chikanere / forulempe sexuel  
\* klage over ngt.  
\* der er ingen grund til / ide i at lade sig påvirke af det  
\* bekymre sig / oprøres over ngt.  
\* føle sig \* påvirket, bekymret, ked af det  
irriteret, oprørt, rystet, vred  
\* gjort bekymret, ked af det, \* foragtende  
irriteret, oprørt, rystet, vred over ngt.  
\* ... ved ngt. \* foragtende \* anstødelighed  
foragtelig krænkelse  
\* rystet etc. over at - \* se igennem fingre med ngt.  
\* vred på ng. \* oprøre etc. ng. >  
\* at - \* have let / frit spil  
\* påvirke / bekymre etc \* vende det blinde øje til ( ngt. )  
ng. at -  
\* vende det døde øre til ng. \* klage  
\* forstærke > \* følelse / opfattelse af ngt.  
\* udsat \* position  
\* chikane  
forulempelse  
\* forstyrrelse  
\* ( fore- ) tage en beslutning om / omkring ngt.  
\* tage ... angående hvxx \* sende på > \* mission  
\* valg > \* falde på ng.  
\* forstyrre / vælte > \* plan  
\* heltemodig \* gennemføre / udrette /  
fuldbyrde ngt.  
\* mandig \* god egenskab af sth. \* mod  
\* vælte / spolere planen ( \* æblekærre )  
\* overladt til sig selv \* i selskab med  
\* fornærmelse overfor ng. \* oprøre / ryste ng.  
\* bryde op fra lejren  
\* føre an \* i desperation /  
vise vej fortvivlelse  
\* forspildt \* mulighed \* få ng. til at fare vild  
føre ng. på vildspor  
\* se sit snit til at -  
\* snige sig væk / = ( A& kravle ) \* så snart som  
\* intetanende \* ude af syne

**207** The corporal returns safely to the **army camp**.

The sergeant and the rest of the squad are very

**upset at** the **sad news** and **upset about** the disappearance of their fellow soldiers.

**In the firm conviction that** the female soldiers were forever lost in enemy territory, the corporal tells the sergeant a **trumped-up explanation** of their disappearance **in the firm belief that** they would never return.

The corporal **persuades** the sergeant **into not calling for 10 reinforcements** as they are too close to the enemy's **lines of defence** to **send in reinforcements**.

The female soldiers, however, **dismiss** their **fears**.

Making an **all-out effort** to avoid revealing their mission to the enemy, they **barely** succeed in **making it back**.

They **only just** succeed in **keeping** ( ) **up** their **courage**, and **making it back** to the camp and the rest of the platoon with **invaluable** information.

It has been a very **upsetting** experience for the rather **defenceless** female soldiers who find some of **20** the circumstances too **upsetting** to talk about.

In the presence of the headquarters - the lieutenants and sergeants - the corporal first **makes an allegation that** the female soldiers didn't follow orders, and then he **alleges** ( **that** ) they have simply **lost** their **way** due to simple **incompetence** ( lack of skills and abilities ).

Not knowing the truth about why they **got lost**, together with some officers' **doubt about** their **competence(s)** / <cy / <cies, **puts** the female soldiers **on the defensive**.

As their **graphic / vivid account of** the events

**30 conflicts with** that of the corporal, **the female soldiers' are** constantly **on the defensive**.

The privates' first **line of defence** is the **spokesperson**: the spokesman or **spokeswoman** for the privates.

**Reunited with** their company commanded by the captain, the female soldiers eventually apply to the spokeswoman.

**Making** a serious **allegation of** dishonesty, the female soldiers **make allegations of misconduct**, discrimination, and **mistreatment against** the corporal.

' We have been **mistreated**, ' the female soldiers **assert**.

\* militær lejr

\*

\* oprørt, rystet \* trist \* nyheder \* ... over ngt. bestyrtet, bekymret

\*

\* i den faste / sikre overbevisning at -

\*

\* ( optrumfet ), ~ opdigtet \* forklaring

\* i den faste / sikre overbevisning at -

\* overtale ng. til at -

\* kalde på >

\* forstærkning

\* forsvarslinie (-r)

\* sende forstærkninger

\* skyde ngt. fra sig

\* frygt

\* altopbydende

\* kraftanstrengelse

\* med nød og næppe

\* klare at nå tilbage

\* lige akkurat

\* holde modet oppe

\* << til ngt.

\* ~ uvurderlig nyttig

\* rystende

\* forsvarsløs

\* <<

\*

\* komme med >

\* en beskyldning om at -

\*

\* hævde at -

\* fare vild

\* inkompetence

\* fare vild

\* tvivl on ngt.

\* kompetence(r)

\* bringe ng. i forsvarsposition

\* malende / levende

\* beretning om ngt.

\* være i modstrid med ngt.

\* være i forsvarsposition

\* støtte til forsvar

\* talsperson

\* talskvinde

\* genforenet med ng.

\*

\* fremsætte >

\* beskyldning om ngt.

\* = >

\* embedsmisbrug misbrug af sin stilling \* mod ng.

\* mishandling

\* mishandle ng.

\* hævde, påstå

<b>208</b> When the spokeswoman is <b>informed of / about</b>	* ( blive ) informeret om / vedrørende ngt.
the harassment, she <b>leaps to</b> the female soldiers' <b>defence</b> .	* ile ng. til forsvar
She finds the corporal's behaviour <b>improper</b>	* upassende
and <b>inappropriate</b> , deeply <b>offensive</b> and <b>indefensible</b> .	* utilstødelig * = * ( dybt ) fornærmende * uforsvarlig krænkende
A <b>judge advocate</b> <b>investigates allegations of</b> misconduct.	* auditor * undersøge ngt. * påstand / beskyldning om ngt.
Even if the corporal <b>alleges / asserts / professes / protests</b>	* hævde / påstå / fremføre ngt.
his <b>innocence</b> and <b>denies</b> all <b>allegations against</b> him,	* uskyld * benægte > * beskyldning mod ng.
a report <b>substantiates</b> the <b>allegations of offensive</b> remarks,	* underbygge ngt. * ... om ngt. * fornærmende
<b>offensive</b> behaviour, and <b>mistreatment</b> of privates.	* = krænkende, oprørende
<b>10</b> Having read the report on misconduct, <b>offending</b> remarks,	* =
and <b>offending</b> behaviour, the captain <b>gets</b> very <b>upset</b> .	* = * blive bekymret oprørt, rystet
As he suddenly stands up, he <b>upsets</b> his chair.	* vælte ngt.
Always ready to <b>defend</b> female soldiers, it <b>upsets</b> him <b>that</b>	* forsvare ng. * bekymre / oprøre / ryste ng. at -
some commissioned officers have <b>connived with</b> some non-	* være i ledtog med ng. >
commissioned officers <b>to permit deliberate offensiveness</b> .	* overlagt * om at - * anstødelighed fornærmelighed
' How can you <b>defend</b> such conduct and behaviour ? '	* forsvare ngt.
he asks himself.	*
He understands how <b>upset</b> the female soldiers must <b>feel</b> .	* bekymret oprørt, rystet
He <b>is upset about</b> the sergeant's and the corporal's	* ... over
<b>20</b> indecent, irresponsible, and <b>indefensible</b> behaviour.	* uforsvarlig
He <b>is upset at</b> the recurrence of the problem.	* << over
He is <b>upset with</b> incompetent officers,	* =
and <b>upset by</b> these officers' incompetence.	* =
The <b>report on</b> sexual discrimination and harassment	* rapport om ngt. >
in the military <b>shows that</b> female soldiers are regularly	* vise at -
<b>harassed and mistreated</b> by officers.	* chikaneret * behandle ng. dårligt mishandle ng.
Much harassment <b>goes beyond indecent language</b> .	* ~ strække sig udover > * uanstændig * sprogbrug sjofel
It <b>upsets</b> the captain <b>to</b> have to admit that the worst	* det bekymre / oprøre / ryste ng. at -
<b>offenders</b> are the young non-commissioned officers.	* krænker lovovertræder
<b>30</b> The sergeant and the corporal are arrested by	
the military police, and <b>taken into /E remanded in custody</b> .	* sendt > * i varetægtsfængsel
( In the military it's not possible to be <b>remanded on bail</b> . )	* løslade mod kaution
So the <b>remand (E) prisoners</b> are <b>held on remand</b>	* varetægtsfange * hold ng. i varetægtsfængsel
in a <b>remand prison / home</b> while <b>waiting for</b> their <b>trial</b> .	* varetægtsfængsel / -institution * vente på > * retssag ( for unge )
The case <b>adds</b> a new <b>urgency to reform</b> .	* føje > * bydende nødvendighed * til > * forandring
Its a <b>matter of</b> ( some ) <b>urgency</b> .	* sag af > * ( en vis ) - - -
As the government <b>is upset about</b> the <b>reinforcement</b> of	* oprørt / skuffet / * styrkelse
existing <b>prejudice</b> by some officers, the Chief of Defence	* bekymret / vred over ngt.
<sup>predjudis</sup> <b>makes a speech in defence of</b> female soldiers.	* fordomsfuldhed
	* holde en tale til forsvar for ng.



<b>209</b> The <b>general staff</b> is / are ready to <b>go all out for</b> a victory.	* generalstben	* sætte alt ind på ng.
So having <b>prepared for</b> an <b>all-out offensive</b> , it <b>goes /</b>	* forberede sig på ng.	* offensiv med alle midler
they <b>go all out to launch / make / mount</b> a <b>surprise attack</b> .	* sætte alt ind på at -	* igangsætte * overraskelses-angreb
Although the enemy troops <b>call for reinforcements</b> ,	* kalde på / ~ beordre >	* forstærkning
the attack <b>forces</b> the enemy troops <b>onto the defensive</b> .	* tvinge ng. >	* i defensiven
As the enemy is unable to <b>defend</b> the <b>all-out</b> attack,	* afværge >	* ~ storstilet ( angreb )
the <b>invading</b> army easily <b>overcomes</b> the enemy's <b>defences</b> .	* invaderende ( hær )	* besejre > * forsvarsmidler / -værker
After the war, crimes <b>allegedly</b> committed during the war,	* som hævdet / påstået / angiveligt	
such as the <b>case of</b> misconduct, are <b>brought to court</b> .	* sag om ng.	* bringe for retten
<b>10</b> It's a <b>case against</b> both the corporal and the sergeant.	* sag mod ng.	
It is <b>alleged that</b> they are guilty of <b>gross misconduct</b> .	* det hævdes / påstås at -	* grov * tjenestemisbrug
They are <b>alleged to</b> have <b>committed</b> serious <b>misconduct</b> .	* være beskyldt for at -	* begå * = ( kun pas. )
As they are <b>prosecuted</b> in a court of law,	* anklaget / rejst tiltale mod	
the <b>prosecutor</b> charges them with various crimes.	* anklageren	
So both the corporal and the sergeant <b>appear in court</b> ,	* komme for retten	
accused of <b>violating</b> military law by misconduct	* forbryde sig mod / overtræde	
and discriminatory behaviour.	*	
Offering a top lawyer to his <b>defence</b> , the corporal's	* forsvar	
<b>foster parents</b> offer to pay a lawyer to <b>defend</b> .	* plejeforældre	* forsvare
<b>20</b> Although they offer a top lawyer to <b>defend</b> him,	* forsvare ng.	
the corporal wants to <b>conduct</b> his <b>own defence</b> .	* føre ngs. forsvar	
The ( <b>counsel for</b> ) the <b>prosecution</b> is / are trying to	* anklageren	
prove its / their case.	*	
<b>Making</b> a long <b>speech defending himself</b> ,	* ~ holde en forsvarstale	
the corporal <b>makes</b> a <b>speech in defence of</b> his actions.	* holde en tale til forsvar for ng.	
Selfdefence is <b>within</b> or <b>beyond</b> a person's <b>capabilities</b> .	* indenfor	* ~ overstiger * evner
Suffering from <b>PTSD</b> ( post traumatic stress disorder )	* posttraumatisk stresssyndrom	
provoked by the false allegations, the female soldiers, however, *		
suffer from partial <b>loss of memory / memory</b> loss.	* hukommelsestab	
<b>30</b> Some <b>memories</b> have vanished from their <b>memory</b> while	* erindringer	* hukommelse
some events <b>remain / stay / are { etched in their memory</b>	* forblive / = / være prentet i ngs. hukommelse	
<b>/ ( indelibly ) stamped on their memory</b> .	* ... ( uudsletteligt ) ...	
Unable to <b>refresh</b> their <b>memories</b> , <b>having no memory of</b>	* genopfriske >	* hukommelse * ikke have nogen > erindring om ng.
some events, the female soldiers act in a <b>defensive</b> manner,	* forsvarspræget	
and answer the questions very <b>defensively</b> .	* forsvarende	
A process in the mind acts as a <b>defence mechanism</b> that	* forsvarsmekanisme	
makes you <b>repress</b> things that are too painful to think about.	* fortrænge	
The female soldiers despise themselves, though,	*	
for <b>defensiveness</b> ; for sounding so <b>defensive</b> .	* > -hed	* forsvarspræget

**210** At first, both **defendants deny** the **charge**,

and **plead not guilty**.

pli~d

The sergeant is accused of having **protected** the corporal

by **closing / shutting** his **eyes** to the **alleged offences**.

The sergeant's **defence** is that he was in a completely

different place at the time of the **alleged** crimes.

The sergeant has a good **defence**, which tries to make

the prosecution **withdraw** the **allegation against** the sergeant.

Success in the defence will **reinforce** the **reputation of**

**10** the **counsel** for the **defence** as **defence lawyers**.

It will reinforce the **defence counsel's** reputation.

**Investigating what** the corporal has been doing in the past,

**the defence** have **investigated** him **for offences** in his past.

**The defence** has to say **in** the sergeant's **defence**

that he knew nothing about the corporal's past **beforehand**.

bì få~hand

The corporal had started **offending** already at the age of 12.

**Associating with criminal elements**, and soon a member

of a **gang** which had **committed** a number of both **minor**

and **serious criminal offences**, he was already then

**20** a **persistent** and **serious offender**.

A victim had **defensive wounds**, and the young offender was found in possession of an **offensive** weapon.

He had spent some time at a **young offender institution** until he was **placed with foster parents** who had decided to **foster** ( a child ) but still he was likely to **offend** again.

His **foster family** lived **on** a military **base** where his **foster father** had been working.

The **foster mother** and the boy didn't get along very well.

She considered him a real **handful**.

**30** Her questions about his past **put** him **on the defensive**.

In the presence of the **harassed** foster mother, the **foster son** was constantly **on the defensive**.

' Don't do anything to **upset** her, she is easily **upset**,'

the foster father had warned his foster son.

The **fosterchild** never **gained** ( the **best of** ) **mental health** by all the **upset** at home.

**Mixing / socializing** exclusively **with** men on the base, he seemed to have changed and stopped **offending**.

\* den tiltalte

\* afvise anklagen

\* plædere ikke skyldig  
nægte sig skyldig

\* beskytte / holde hånden over ng.

\* lukke øjnene for ngt.

\* påstået

\* forbrydelse

\* forsvar

\* påstået

\* forsvar

\* tilbagetrække >

\* beskyldning mod ng.

\* styrke

\* omdømme  
ry

\* forsaret ( -s advokat / -er )

\* forsaret

\* undersøge hvxx

\* forsaret + pl.

\* ... ng. for ngt.  
forbrydelse

\* krænkelse  
forbrydelse

\* = + sg.

\* til ngs. forsvar

\* på forhånd

\* bryde / overtræde loven  
lave ulovligheder, begå kriminalitet

\* pleje omgang med /  
omgås ng.

\* kliminel

\* elementer

\* bande

\* begå

\* mindre

\* alvorlig

\* kriminel

\* forbrydelse  
lovovertrædelse

\* hårdnakket

\* slem

\* lovovertræder, kriminel  
~ hårdkogt vaneforbryder

\* ~ sår efter forsvar

\* angrebsvåben

\* ungdomsforvaringsanstalt

\* anbringe ng. hos ng.

\* plejeforældre

\* opfostre ( ng. )

\* bryde loven, begå kriminalitet

\* plejefamilie

\* på >

\* base

\* plejefar

\* plejemor

\* ~ person, der er svær at styre

\* bringe ng. >

\* i forsvarsposition

\* fortravlet

\* plejesøn

\* ( være ) i forsvarsposition

\* irritere / misfornøje ng.

\* ( blive ) ...

\* gøre ng. ked af det / ulykkelig

\* plegebarn

\* opnå ( fuld ) mentale sundhed  
blive mentalt ( helt ) rask

\* ved

\* uro

\* ~ omgås ng.

\* overtræde loven, lave kriminalitet

<b>211</b> Tolerance in general never <b>asserted itself</b> on the base.	* vinde indpas	
The contemptuous, disdainful, dismissive, and scornful tone	*	
used on the base <b>reinforced</b> the foster son's <b>scorn</b> for the	* forstærke ngt.	* foragt for ( ide )
<b>idea</b> that women should be treated on even terms with men.	* ide / princip at -	
The air around the base <b>was alleged to be polluted</b> .	* være hævdet / påstået / beskyldt for at -	* forurene ngt.
Among causes of <b>pollution</b> , <b>exhaust fumes</b> from <b>vehicles</b>	* forurening * udstødning * røg, dampe * køretøj / -blæsning dunster, giftige gasser	
and <b>aircraft</b> were claimed to be <b>major offenders</b> .	* flyvemaskine * af større omfang * synder, forbryder lovovertræder	* skade ngt.
So <b>when it came to</b> pollution and <b>harming</b> the environment,	* når det kommer til / dreje sig / handle om ( at ) ngt.	
the base was probably <b>the worst polluter</b> and <b>offender</b> .	* den værste > * forurener	* synder
<b>10 Offended</b> by <b>disagreeable</b> / <b>unpleasant</b> noise and smell,	* generet / irriteret af ngt.	* ubehagelig ( støj / lugt )
a group of people in the neighbourhood <b>complained</b>	* klage ( > )	
( <b>to</b> the authorities ) ( <b>about</b> / <b>of</b> noisy and <b>fuming</b> machinery ).	* til ng. * over ngt.	* røg- og gasudstødende
As the public seemed <b>unconvinced</b> by the military's latest	* ikke overbevist	
<b>charm offensive</b> , there had continued to be <b>outcries</b>	* charme offensiv * ramaskrig / ~ udtalte protester >	
<b>at / over / against</b> the lack of steps to <b>abate</b> pollution.	* over / mod ngt.	* formindske ( forurening )
The <b>protesting</b> inhabitants had decided to <b>go on a march</b> .	* protestere	* gå i protestmarch
Having arranged a <b>protest march</b> , they had <b>marched on</b>	* protest march	* marchere mod ngt.
the base, <b>demonstrating against</b> it for being a <b>nuisance</b> .	* demonstrere imod ngt.	* gene plage
<b>Protesting about noise nuisance</b> and <b>obnoxious smells</b> ,	* ... over > * støjplage	* modbydelig lugt lugtgener
<b>20 the marchers</b> , the <b>demonstrators</b> and <b>protesters</b> ,	* marchdeltager * demonstrant	* protestsdeltager
carried banners <b>protesting against</b> the <b>position</b> of base.	* protestere over ngt.	* beliggenhed
<b>Protesting at</b> the <b>offensive</b> smells and noise, the marchers	* ... mod ngt.	* generende irriterende
<b>protested that</b> the base was a <b>nuisance to</b> the whole area.	* ... over at -	* gene / plage for ng&t.
There was a <b>furious debate</b> / <b>argument over</b> the march.	* voldsom, hidsig ophidset	* debat / diskussion over ngt. ( skænderi )
Some pro-military people had tried to <b>block</b> the <b>advance</b>	* blokere for ngt.	* fremrykning
of the <b>demonstration</b> by placing their cars across the road.	* demonstration	
The <b>traffic jam</b> didn't <b>clear</b> until the police had <b>removed</b>	* trafikprop	* opløses * fjerne
the <b>offending vehicles</b> .	* lovbyrdende	* køretøj
As the drivers had <b>committed punishable offences</b> ,	* begå strafbar lovovertrædelse	
<b>30</b> they were <b>charged with driving</b> and <b>parking offences</b> .	* anklage ng. for ngt. * færdsels- * parkeringsforseelse	
The court <b>imposed large fines</b> on the <b>offending</b> drivers.	* idømme ng. > * stor bøde	* lovovertrædende
The <b>offenders</b> were <b>given heavy fines</b> .	* lovovertræder * få > * & betragtelig / betydelig ...	
Each of them had to pay a <b>hefty fine</b> which <b>angered</b> them.	* betale en ...	* gøre ng. vred
They each had to <b>pay</b> 500 £ <b>in fines</b> .	* betale xx i bøde	
<b>Fierce</b> dogs <b>defended</b> the police <b>from furious</b> protesters.	* hidsig ~bidsk * forsvare ng. mod ng.	* rasende
<b>Furious at / about</b> the demonstration, <b>furious ( that )</b> it	* rasende over ngt.	* ... over at -
could be a threat to his world, the young <b>former offender</b>	* tidligere	* forbryder kriminel
had been especially <b>furious at / with</b> a female <b>demonstrator</b> .	* rasende på ng.	* demonstrant
The sight of her in front had <b>offended</b> his <b>eye</b> .	* støde ngs. øje	

212	Joining the army, the fosterchild had seemed to become	*		
	rather <b>inoffensive</b> as far as he wasn't <b>confronted</b> with women.	* harmløs skikkelig		* konfrontere ng. med ng.
	Questioned about his past, the corporal <b>gets offensive</b> .	* blive aggressiv / grov		
	By listening to the <b>cross-examination</b> of the corporal, -ig'zami'nei\$ên	* krydsforhør		
	the female soldiers <b>regain</b> their <b>memory</b> , and as it <b>brings</b> ()	* genvinde >	* deres hukommelse hukommelsen	* bringe ngt. >
	<b>`back</b> crucial <b>memories</b> , the sergeant eventually realizes that	* tilbage		* erindringer
	the corporal's <b>defence</b> is based on <b>indefensible</b> arguments.	* forsvar		* uholdbare
	As new facts <b>refresh</b> the sergeant's <b>memory</b> , he <b>drops</b> his ri'fre\$	* genopfriske > * ( ngs. )	* hukommelse	* opgive ( sit ) >
	<b>defence</b> as he realizes he has made an <b>indefensible</b> mistake.	* forsvar ( lade sit forsvar falde )		* uforsvarlig utilgivelig
10	Admitting to have been <b>lead astray</b> , he admits to have ê'strei	* føre på vildspor		
	<b>allowed</b> himself <b>to be induced to cover</b> () <b>`up</b> the corporal's	* lade sig forlede til at -		* dække over ngt.
	<b>conflicting</b> and <b>contradictory statements</b> . kên'flikting kântrê'diktêri	* uoverensstemmende	* modsigende	* udtalelse
	The prosecution now <b>extend(s)</b> the <b>charge</b>	* udvide >		* anklagen
	accusing the corporal of treason; of having <b>turned traitor</b> to	* blive forrædder		
	his <b>subordinates</b> – his <b>subordinate</b> female soldiers – sê'bâ~dinê	* underordnet		* =
	and to his country.	*		
	<b>When all is said and done</b> the corporal is unable to	* når alt kommer til alt til syvende og sidst		
	<b>defend</b> the <b>indefensible</b> .	* forsvare det utilgivelig		
	The corporal is found guilty and <b>sentenced to jail for</b>	* ( blive ) idømt fængsel for >		
20	<b>lifetime</b> only just avoiding <b>capital punishment</b> .	* livstid		* dødsstraf
	When the sergeant is convicted of <b>dereliction of duty</b> ,	* pligtforsømmelse		
	and reduced to the ranks, he <b>fumes</b> , ' <b>Blast</b> the corporal –	* fnyse		* sprænge ngt. i luften ( = > )
	<b>to hell with him</b> .'	* ad helvede til med ng.		
	The government <b>goes on the offensive over</b> the <b>soaring</b> `så~(r)ing	* gå i offensiven over ngt.		* kraftigt stigende
	amount of cases of sexual <b>harassment</b> .	* chikane forfølgelse		
	It <b>launches</b> a new <b>offensive against</b> sexual harassment	* igangsætte		
	and discrimination.	*		
	The Government <b>is</b> very much <b>on the offensive</b>	* i offensiven		
	in the fight against discrimination.	*		
30	<b>Soaring</b> numbers of women who <b>feel upset</b> and <b>offended</b>	* kraftigt stigende		* føle sig oprørt og stødt
	by discrimination and harassment make <b>formal</b> complaints	* formel		
	against their <b>tormentors</b> in a court of law. tâ~`mentêz	* plageånd		
	Making a complaint is quite a <b>simple procedure</b> .	* en simpel >		* ~ fremgangsmåde, sag
	As <b>plaintiffs</b> /E& <b>complainants</b> , the women <b>sue</b>	* sagsøger		* sagsøge >
	their tormentors <b>for breach of</b> the <b>civil law</b> ( # criminal law ).	* ng. for > * brud på / overtrædelse af >	* borgerlig ret ( kriminal ret )	
	A <b>law</b> or <b>regulation</b> may <b>apply to</b> both <b>public</b> `places	* lov	* regulativ	* gælde for > * offentlig sted
	and <b>private</b> `property.	* privat område / ejendom		
	Some places are not <b>admitted to</b> the <b>public</b>	* ~ er der ikke adgang for offentligheden		
	and there may be no <b>public</b> `access to a place.	* offentlig adgangsvej til ngt.		

## HISTORY OF ENGLAND ( I )

<b>213</b> If we look at a <b>geological</b> and physical <b>map of</b> the British <b>Isles</b> , we see that the oldest <b>rocks</b> make the hills and <b>mountains</b> of the west and north, and that the newest form the <b>comparatively flat country</b> that lies south and east of a line running from Devonshire to north Yorkshire.	<b>geologisk</b> <b>undergrunds</b> <b>ø ( poetisk )</b> <b>bjerg</b> <b>i sammenligning</b> <b>*</b>	<b>kort over ngt.</b> <b>bjergart</b> <b>klippe</b> <b>landskab</b> <b>*</b>
This has <b>been</b> of <b>supreme importance in</b> British history, for the low <b>land facing</b> the Continent has always <b>invited invasion</b> .	<b>være af overordentlig betydning for</b> <b>land</b> <b>* vende mod ngt.</b> <b>* invitere til &gt;</b>	<b>*</b> <b>invasion</b> <b>indtrængen</b> <b>* limsten</b>
Yet this lower <b>ground</b> has its <b>uplands (pl): the limestone</b> <b>ridge</b> that runs from Portland Bill and the <b>Cotswolds</b> to the Cleveland Hills, and the <b>chalk</b> hills of the Chilterns and Sussex and Dorset <b>Downs</b> that <b>radiate</b> from the central <b>boss</b> of Salisbury <b>Plain</b> .	<b>( terræn- ) grund</b> <b>* højland</b> <b>* højdedrag / -ryg</b> <b>bakke- / bjergkam</b> <b>* kridt</b> <b>kalk</b> <b>* højdedrag i Sydengland</b> <b>( klippe-) fremspring / pukkel</b>	<b>* =</b> <b>~ ( kreatur-) hyttebakkekam</b> <b>* stråle ud</b> <b>* slette</b>
The chalk and limestone <b>layers</b> consist <b>chiefly</b> of <b>calcium carbonate</b> and are <b>raised</b> sea <b>bed</b> formed of <b>fossil</b> <b>calcareous shells</b> of one-celled animals called <b>foraminifers</b> .	<b>lag</b> <b>* kalciumkarbonat</b> <b>* hævet</b> <b>* bund</b> <b>Ca CO3</b> <b>* kalk-</b> <b>* skal</b>	<b>* hovedsageligt</b> <b>* fossil</b> <b>forstening</b> <b>* foraminifer</b> <b>( hulbærer )</b>
<b>PREHISTORY / PREHISTORIC TIMES</b>	<b>* forhistorisk tid</b>	
The <b>Stone Age</b> is divided into the <b>pal(aeolithic,</b> <b>mesolithic,</b> and <b>neolithic period</b> .	<b>* stenalder</b> <b>* mellem</b> <b>* yngre</b> <b>* sten-</b>	<b>* ældre</b> <b>* ~ alder</b>
As these limestone and chalk hills are dry, they <b>offered</b> <b>20 a refuge for</b> primitive man above the <b>swamps</b> of the river <b>valleys</b> and on Salisbury Plain is his greatest <b>memorial</b> , Stonehenge.	<b>tilbyde &gt;</b> <b>* tilflugtssted ng.</b> <b>* dal</b> <b>*</b>	<b>* sump</b> <b>* mindesmærke</b> <b>monument</b>
England has long been <b>thinly peopled</b> by <b>wandering</b> Stone Age hunters when, about 2400 B C, a <b>Mediterranean</b> <b>people</b> arrived and settle on the chalk hills and Cotswolds where they <b>buried</b> their <b>dead (pl.)</b> in long <b>barrows</b> . They were the first farmers to <b>people</b> England. Little by little the whole country was <b>peopled with</b> farmers. A few centuries later a similar <b>southern</b> people <b>landed in</b> <b>30 the west, bringing with</b> them the <b>custom of</b> building great stone <b>tombs</b> , commonest along the <b>coast</b> from Cornwall to the Orkneys.	<b>tyndt</b> <b>* befolke ngt.</b> <b>* omvandrende</b> <b>* middelhavs-</b> <b>* folk</b> <b>* begrave ng.</b> <b>* døde</b> <b>* grav- / kæmpehøj</b> <b>* befolke ngt.</b> <b>* ... med ng.</b> <b>* sydlig</b> <b>* vesten</b> <b>* bringe &gt; med sig</b> <b>* skik ( med ) at -</b> <b>~ vestpå</b> <b>* grav / -kammer</b> <b>* kyst</b> <b>/ -monument / -mæle</b> <b>*</b>	
It was they who began the building of Stonehenge, the <b>outer bank</b> and <b>ditch</b> , apparently a <b>sanctuary</b> <b>associated / connected with</b> a sun <b>cult</b> . B C (E/A) B.C. is an <b>abbreviation of / for</b> before Christ so before Christ is <b>abbreviated / shortened to</b> B C / B.C.	<b>* ydre</b> <b>* vold</b> <b>* grøft</b> <b>* fredhelligt sted</b> <b>* forbinde med &gt;</b> <b>* forkortelse af / for ngt.</b> <b>* forkortet til ngt.</b>	<b>* kult</b> <b>dyrkelse</b>

**214** The **Neolithic Period** is the last **phase** of the Stone Age, marked by the **domestication** of animals, development of agriculture, and the **manufacture** of **pottery** and **textiles**.  
manju`fakt\$ê  
 About 1700 BC these **Neolithic** people were **subdued** by **invaders from** Holland and the Rhinland, the powerful **stocky Beaker Folk**, so called from their characteristic drinking **vessel**.  
`ståki  
 They **brought** a knowledge of **bronze**, apparently **traded** with Ireland and from Pembrokeshire **transported** some eighty **10** great **bluestones** which they **erected** in a double circle at the centre of the Stonehenge sanctuary.

\* yngre stenalder \* fase / periode af ( tidsalder )  
 \* tæmning  
 \* fremstilling \* pottemageri \* & klæde  
 \* fra yngre stenalder \* undertvinge  
 \* invaderende fra ngt.  
 \* lavstammet \* bægerfolket  
 \* beholder  
 kar, kop, krus  
 \* medbringe > / \* kendskab til / \* = \* handle ngt. >  
 tage > med sig viden om ngt.  
 \* med ng. \* transportere ngt. fra et sted  
 \* blåsten \* rejst \* & rundkreds  
 ( lerholdig sandsten )  
 \*

### CELTIC INVASION

The **Celts** **occupied** a large part of **Iron Age** Europe. They were known to the Greeks as Keltoi and to the Romans as **Gauls**.  
gå~lz  
 There were numerous Celtic tribes and **chiefdoms** sharing a culture that can be **traced back to** the **Bronze Age** of central Europe ( c. 1200 BC ).  
 The Celtic **warrior** aristocracy **commanded** considerable **20** wealth and power.  
 The **Druidic** priesthood **conducted sacrifices** and the **Druids** were responsible for the education of young nobles.  
 There were other minor invasions before **the coming of** the Celts, who from about 800 BC **pressed into** Britain from France and Germany.  
 They, too, were **mixed** people, farmers **skilled in** the **working of** bronze, and later of **iron**, but in the third century peaceful **infiltration** became **predatory** invasion.  
`predêtri  
**30** by warrior **bands armed with** weapons of iron.  
 These Celts **struck** north into East Anglia, Lincolnshire and Yorkshire, they occupied Cornwall for its **tin**, **overran** Ireland and Scotland and everywhere **established** themselves as a **conquering** aristocracy.

\* keltisk  
 \* kelter \* besætte ngt. \* jernalder  
 \*  
 \* galler  
 \* høvdingerige  
 \* spore \* bronzealder  
 \*  
 \* kriger \* råde over ngt.  
 \*  
 \* druidisk \* forestå / lede > \* ofring  
 \* druide  
 \*  
 \* kommen af ngt.  
 \* trænge sig ind i ngt. fra ngt.  
 \*  
 \* opøvet /  
 uddannet i ngt.  
 \* formning af ( et materiale ) \* jern  
 \* infiltration \* rovgrisk  
 røverisk  
 \* bande \* bevæbnet med ( våben af jern )  
 \* slå ind på ( en retning )  
 \* tin \* løbe ngt. overende  
 \* etablere sig >  
 \* som ngt. \* sejrende

<b>215</b> It was in this early <b>Iron Age</b> that the <b>hilltop fortresses</b> were built, some by the defenders, like Maiden Castle in Dorset, others by the <b>conquering chieftains</b> as <b>strongholds</b> from which to <b>overawe</b> the countryside.	* jernalderen	* bakketop	* fæstning
The <b>conquerors</b> <b>imposed</b> their language <b>on</b> the <b>natives</b> , its <b>Gaelic</b> form in Ireland and Scotland, the <b>Brythonic</b> in England and Wales; and it was the Brythonic tribe that gave its name to the whole country, though the most powerful was that of <b>the Belgae</b> in the south-east.	* * sejrende > * indgyde ng. ( ære- ) frygt imponere / skræmme / underkue ng. * erobrer * gælisk	* høvding * påtvinge * bretonsk	* fæstning * indfødt * belgisk folk
<b>10</b> ( If you are not familiar with words in Gaelic or Brythonic these words aren't easy to <b>get</b> your <b>tongue (a)round</b> ; these words don't exactly <b>roll</b> / <b>slip</b> / <b>trip off</b> the <b>tongue</b> . )	* få > ~ udtale * rulle / glide / snuble fra > ~ være lette at udtale * helt ( og aldeles ) * importere ngt. * druide	* ( sin ) tungen omkring * tungen * barbarisk	
It was an Age of Iron, though not <b>altogether barbaric</b> . The Celts <b>imported</b> the luxuries of the Mediterranean.  Their priests, the <b>Druids</b> were the teachers and <b>administrators</b> of the age, and their <b>craftsmen developed</b> an <b>abstract curvilinear art</b> that is one of the glories of the western civilization.	â~ltê`gedê bā~`barik * administrstor * abstrakt * overvejende * i > * stridsvogn * Julius Cæsar * sommer * * * * ngts. kommen * gennemtrængen af ng.	* håndværker * bueliniet * sætte sig op / kæmpe imod ngt. * legion (3000-6000 infanterisoldater) * ekspedition	* udvikle > * kunstart
These then were <b>the Britons</b> , now <b>predominantly</b> Celtic, <b>20</b> who in their <b>war chariots</b> <b>opposed</b> the <b>landing of Julius Caesar</b> and his <b>legions</b> in 55 and 56 BC. But Caesar's <b>summer expeditions</b> were a failure, <b>and it</b> was another hundred years before the Romans came again.  During the century between Caesar's expeditions and <b>the second coming</b> of the legions, there was a peaceful Roman <b>penetration</b> of Britain.  Under the Belgic chief <i>Cunobelin</i> , Shakespeare's <i>Cymbeline</i> , <b>much of Southern</b> England was for the first time <b>united under</b> <b>30</b> a single ruler, <b>Rex Brittonum</b> as he was called.  Roman <b>merchants</b> settled here, slaves, iron and <b>corn</b> were <b>exported</b> in exchange for Roman luxuries.  In Colchester, his capital, <i>Cymbeline</i> <b>struck coins</b> after the Roman <b>pattern</b> .  When he died, however, his kingdom <b>collapsed</b> , and in <b>AD 43</b> the Roman emperor <i>Claudius</i> sent an army to <b>add Britain to his empire</b> .	* då - * i > * Julius Cæsar * sommer * * * * ngts. kommen * gennemtrængen af ng. * sydlig * forenet under ng. * købmand * eksportere ng. * slå mønt * mønster, forbillede * kollapse, bryde sammen * i > * addere / lægge ng. til ng.	* landgang af > * legion (3000-6000 infanterisoldater) * ekspedition * konge af Britanien * korn * = Anno Domini ~ det Herrens år * emperium kejserige	

**216** In spite of the **fierce resistance of** the wild tribes of the north, and of *Queen Boadica* in Norfolk, the Roman legions soon occupied England.

Wales, too, was eventually **subdued**, but the occupation of the islands was **virtually confined to** England; Wales was too **mountainous** for **civilian** settlement, Scotland too wild and **warlike** and Cornwall too **barren** and **remote**.

In the west and north, therefore, the old Celtic **tribalism** remained, and the Romans **sealed off** these dangerous areas **10** by building **forts** at Caerleon, Chester and York, each the headquarters of a legion, and a great **defensive** wall called *Hadrian's Wall* across the north of England from Solway to the **mouth of** Tyne.

There was no attempt to **invade** Ireland.

London, on the site where the Thames could most easily be **bridged**, was also **walled**, and from this **inland port** **radiated** the **straight, paved** roads that **led to** the **garrison** towns.

*Ermine street* and *Watling street*, as the Saxons were to **20** call them, the one to Lincoln, York and the Wall, the other to Chester, and a third, *Ickniel Way*, to Silchester, Cirencester, Gloucester and Caerleon.

A fourth **road**, the *Fosse Way*, **ran from** Lincoln to Cirencester and Exeter, the last **outpost** in the south-west.

London is a Celtic name as are the names of most of the rivers, but many of the towns that the Romans built along their roads, from Lancaster to Winchester and Chichester, still have the Latin **termination** castra, a camp or **fortified** town.

The Roman occupation was a **paternal** one, bringing **30 prosperity** and **orderly** government to a **disorderly**, and therefore dangerous, province **on the frontier of** empire.

Some towns were allowed self-government, and the Britons became citizens of the Roman Empire.

A person who lives in or comes from a part of a country that is not near the **capital city** is, often **disapprovingly**, called a **provincial**; often considered as being unwilling to consider new ideas of things, provincials are thus said to be **provincial**, and **stand for provincialism**.

* hård	* modstand af ng.
*	
*	
* undertvinge ( et land )	
* rent faktisk i virkeligheden	* begrænset til ngt.
* bjergrig	* civil
* krigerisk	* gold, øde ufrugtbar
* stammekultur / -organisation	* afsidesliggende
* afspærre ngt.	
* fort	
* forsvars- ( mur )	
*	
* udmunding af ( en flod )	
* invadere ( et land )	
*	
* forsyne med bro	* ... med mur
* stråle ud	* lige
*	* brolagt
*	* føre til >
*	* garnison soldaterforlægning
*	
*	
*	
* vej >	* løbe fra ngt. til ngt.
* udpost	
*	
*	
*	
* endelse	* befæstet
* faderlig ( beskyttende )	
* fremgang	* ordentlig
* på >	* grænseområdet ( af et sted )
*	
*	
*	
* hovedstad	* foragteligt
* provinsbo	
*	
* provinsiel	* stå for >
	* provinsialisme



217 Few of the occupying soldiers, <b>civil servants</b> and	* embedsmand		
<b>merchants</b> would come from Rome or Italy and probably	* købmand		
the majority were <b>romanized Gauls</b> from France, Celts	* galler		
and <b>kinsmen</b> of the British.	* slægtning		
<b>Intermarriage</b> , therefore, would not greatly affect the native	* indgiftning		
- `marid\$			
<b>stock</b> , though the <b>native tongue absorbed</b> many Latin words.	* bestand	* modersmål	* absorbere /
	befolkningsstamme		optage ( ord )
For some three centuries under the <i>Pax Romana</i> the Britons	*		
of the southern half of England knew little or nothing of war.	*		
Towns were centres of civilization, and Bath and	*		
10 Verulamium <b>emulated</b> the <b>elegance</b> of Rome.	* efterligne /		* elegance
	søge at overgå ngt.		
The ports <b>shipped lead</b> from Shropshire and the Mendips,	* forsende / udskibe ngt.		* bly
iron from the <b>Weald</b> and Forest of Dean, even <b>gold</b> from	* skov ( ~ tysk : wald )		* guld
Wales, and corn was exported to <b>feed</b> the <b>populace</b> of	* ~ brødføde >	* den brede befolkning	
the <b>imperial capital</b> .	* kejserlig	* hovedstad	
There was more of the old Celtic way of life in the country,	*		
but the <b>wealthier</b> British farmers, their land cultivated by <b>serfs</b>	* mere velhavende, rigere		* livegen
or <b>slaves</b> lived in villas <b>adorned</b> with <b>frescoes</b> and <b>mosaics</b> ,	* slave	* pryde /	* mosaik
	ê`dã~nd	udsmykke ngt.	kalkmaleri
and <b>warmed</b> by <b>central heating</b> .	* opvarme ngt.		* centralvarme
Much work was based on <b>serfdom</b> or <b>slavery</b> .	* livegenskab		* slaveri
20 For the wealthy farmers and the prosperous town <b>dwellers</b> ,	* ( be-) boer		
educated in the art and literature of Rome, the second century	*		
was perhaps the most <b>idyllic</b> in England's history.	* idyllisk		
	i`dilik / ai` -	smuk og fredfyldt	
By this time there was a few Christians in eastern England,	*		
and at the beginning of the <i>fourth century</i> the province	*		
produced its first <b>martyr</b> , <i>St.Alban</i> .	* martyr		
	`matê		
The empire was still <b>pagan</b> , and the religion of the Britons	* hedensk		
a <b>confusion</b> of Roman and Celtic <b>cult(s)</b> , but soon after	* sammenblanding		* gudsdyrkelse
the <b>martyrdom</b> of Alban, the Emperor Constantine made	/ -rod		( religion )
Christianity the <b>emperial</b> religion, and a British church was	* martyrium		
	* kejserlig		
30 soon a <b>flourishing</b> institution.	* blomstrende		
It had not time, however, to <b>convert</b> more than a <b>fraction</b>	* omvende ng.		* ( brøk- ) del
of the population, for the Empire, <b>rotten</b> at the centre, was	* rådden		
beginning to <b>break up</b> .	* ~ gå i opløsning		
( Leaders are easily <b>corrupted</b> by power and ambition,	* ( blive ) korruperet		
and then unwilling to <b>abjure</b> their <b>corrupt lifestyle</b> . )	* afsværge / opgive >	* korrupt >	* livsstil

**218** Barbarians were **battering at** its **frontiers**,  
and in **367** the wild Celts of the north, the Picts and Scots,  
**overran** the Wall, while Saxon pirates landed in the east,  
and **ravaged** the greater part of England.

For another **fifty** years the Romans managed to hold  
the province, but the end was **in sight**.

They could not afford to keep an army of **forty** thousand  
men along the **Welsh** and Scottish **marches** and along  
the ' Saxon **Shore** ' from Norfolk to Kent, and at the beginning  
**10** of the *fifth century* they **withdrew**.

The civilized and **unwarlike** Britons were **left to the mercy**  
of the barbarians who surrounded them.

**Conquest** between the 3rd and 7th centuries **by Angles**,  
**Saxons** and **Jutes** led to the establishment of independent  
kingdoms East Anglia, Mercia, Northumbria and Wessex,  
which **were united** in the 9<sup>th</sup> century under the **leadership of**  
Wessex.

The Angles, Saxons, and Jutes were barbaric Germanic  
( = Teutonic) tribes who lived north of the mouth of the Rhine.

**20** The Angles was a Germanic tribe **originating from**  
the **Angeln district** of Schleswig.

The Saxons were a Germanic people who during the 5th.  
century expanded from their Baltic **coastal homelands**  
to other areas of N Germany, the coast of Gaul and to Britain.

The Jutes were a Germanic people, probably from Jutland.

They were **primarily** farmers, but promise of **plunder in**  
the neighbouring island **roused** all their **piratical instinct**,  
and in the course of the fifth century they **advanced from**  
the east **to** the west of England, **up** the **rivers** along  
**30** the Roman roads, **sacking** and **burning** towns and villas,  
**slaughtering** and **enslaving** the Britons.

Many of the Britons **fled west, into** Wales and Cornwall,  
taking with them their Roman culture, language and  
Christianity.

* hamre på >	* græser, -områder
*	
* løbe ngt. overende	
* hæрге / rasere / ødelægge ngt.	
* halvtreds	
* i syne	
* fyrre	
* walisisk	* grænseland ( hist.)
* kyst	
* trække sig tilbage	
* ukrigerisk	* overladt til ngs. barmhjertighed / til ng. på nåde og unåde
*	
* erobring ( gjort ) af ng.	* angler
* sakser	* jyde
*	
* blive forenet	* under lederskab af ( et land )
*	
*	
* oprinde / stamme fra ( sted )	
* =	* distrikt, område
*	
* kystnære	* hjemegn
*	
*	
* primært, først og fremmest	* plyndring bytte, rov
* opildne / vække >	* sørøverisk
	* instinkt
* rykke frem fra ngt. >	
* til ngt.	* op ad >
	* flod
* plyndre ( by )	
* ned- / slagte	* gøre ng. til slave
* flygte	* vestpå
	* ind i ngt.
*	
*	

<b>219</b> It was at the end of this century, about 500, that one of these <b>romanized</b> Celts, Ambrosius Aurelius, <b>checked</b> <b>the English</b> at the <b>battle of</b> Badon, somewhere in Dorset or Wiltshire.	*		
	* romerskpræget		* standse / stoppe ng.
	* englænderne	* i >	* slaget ved ng.
	*		
This is the period of the half-legendary <i>King Arthur</i> , the British <b>champion</b> of Christianity against the <b>heathen</b> English.	* forkæmper		
	* forkæmper for ng.		* hedensk
It is also the period of <i>St Patrick</i> , a British <b>missionary</b> who spent his life converting the Irish Celts to Christianity.	* missionær		
	*		
He became bishop in Ireland and <b>patron saint</b> of Ireland.	* skytshelgen		
<b>10</b> So successful was his work that Ireland became a land of <b>monasteries</b> and missionaries, the most important of whom was St. Columba, who in 563 founded a monastery on the little island of Iona, from which the Celts of Scotland were to be converted.	* * * munkekloster * missionær * *		
It was a strange <b>reversal</b> of the situation: instead of a civilized and Christian England surrounded and <b>menaced by</b> pagan Celts, a barbaric and pagan England threatened the more civilized and partly Christian Celts, <b>the Welsh</b> , or 'foreigners' as the English called them.	* venden op og ned på ng. * true ng. * * waliserne *		
<b>20</b> There were four of these Celtic countries: Scotland, Wales, Cornwall - for the English had not yet <b>overrun</b> the Devonian <b>peninsula</b> - and Ireland.	* * løbe ng. overende * halvø		
In this <b>dark age</b> , Ireland was the <b>centre of light</b> , its monks and saints, when not fighting, <b>jealously treasuring</b> a knowledge of Latin literature and <b>lovingly illuminating</b> their <b>manuscripts of the Gospels</b> .	* i ( denne ) mørke > * tids- * centrum for > * oplysning alder * * jaloux * skatte / værdsætte / vogte over ng. * kærligt * kolorere ng. * håndskrift af > * evangelie hengivent *		
The civilization of the Celts, however, must not be <b>overestimated</b> .	* overvurdere ng.		
- `es - They were a <b>quarrelsome</b> people, who found it difficult to <b>unite into</b> larger <b>units</b> than the clan or tribe; it is significant that their monasteries were <b>congregations of hermits</b> / <b>eremits</b> living in separate <b>cells</b> .	* trættekær krakilsk * forene sig i > * menighed * = * sogn *		* enhed * eneboer * celle
For the Celts the <b>parish</b> has always been more important than for the English.			

<b>220 Moreover, memories</b> of Roman civilization were <b>growing</b>	* desuden endvidere	* minder erindrenger	* ( gro ) ~ blive >
- `éuvê			
<b>dim</b> in Wales and Cornwall: Latin spelling, and even the letters	* dunkel svag		
<b>falter</b> on <b>tombstones</b> of <b>Cornish</b> Christians of Arthur's time,	* svækkes, blive utydelig	* gravsten	* kornisk cornwallsk
- `tu~m -			
and before long the old Celtic way of life <b>reasserted</b> itself,	* genbefæste sig		
and Rome was only a legend.	*		
For the English the sixth century was one of <b>consolidation</b>	* befæstelse forening		
and settlement, for they had destroyed almost every <b>trace</b> of	* spor		
the civilization of the Romans, <b>save</b> the roads and <b>pheasants</b> .	* bortset fra ngt.		* fasan
There was <b>fighting</b> , of course, among the many <b>petty</b>	* kamp / -handler		* lille ubetydelig
<b>10</b> kingdoms, but gradually three greater <b>kingdoms</b> began to	* kongerige		
<b>emerge</b> : <i>Northumbria</i> north of Humber, <i>Mercia</i> in the Midlands,	* opstå		
and <i>Wessex</i> in the south.	*		
Then at the end of the century <b>Pope</b> Gregory sent	* pave		
a monk, Augustine, to convert the English to Christianity.	*		
He landed in Kent in 597, converted its king, and became	*		
the first <b>Archbishop</b> of <b>Canterbury</b> , the Kentish capital.	* ærkebiskop af ...		
- ` -			
Northumbria, too, was converted, not <b>altogether</b> by Roman	* & udelukkende		
missionaries, however, but also by Celtic missionaries led	*		
by St.Aidan, a monk from Iona who had founded a monastery	*		
<b>20</b> on the island of Lindisfarne.	*		
By the middle of the seventh century all England was	*		
converted, though not to the same form of Christianity.	*		
Celtic Christianity had come to England three hundred years	*		
before that of St. Augustine, and there were <b>slight</b> differences	* lille / små ubetydelig		
and <b>inevitable jealousies</b> .	* uundgåelig		* ~ jealous handler
- `vit -      `dşelêsiz			
To decide which should be accepted a <b>synod</b> of bishops	* kirkemøde		
- `sinêd			
was called in 664.	*		
The decision was in favour of the new Roman form.	*		
It was of <b>immense</b> importance.	* umådelig		
<b>30</b> It <b>foreshadowed</b> the future <b>struggle with</b> Rome and,	* forudantydte / bebude / varsle ngt.		
fâ~\$adêud			
more immediately, <b>brought</b> England <b>within</b> the <b>influence</b>	* bringe ngt. indenfor >		* ( ng&ts. ) indflydelse
of the Mediterranean and <b>into contact with</b> the new civilization	* i kontakt / berøring med ng&t.		
of Europe.	*		
Religion has always had a <b>decisive influence / effect on</b>	* afgørende indflydelse / virkning		
politics.	*		

<b>221</b> Then, the Church through its bishops brought <b>literacy</b>	* læse og skrivefærdighed	
and learning to kings and their councils, greater humanity	*	
to their laws and conduct, and its <b>organization into dioceses</b>	* organisering i >	* bispedømme
and parishes <b>prefigured</b> a <b>corresponding</b> political	* bebude / varsle ngt.	* tilsvarende
organization and unity.	*	
The time was not yet, however.	*	
<i>The seventh century</i> was that of the supremacy	*	
of Northumbria whose great king Edwin advanced its frontier	*	
to the Forth, where he built his <b>stronghold</b> of Edinburgh.	* fæstning	
<b>10</b> It was in this northern kingdom that <b>English</b> art and <b>letters</b>	* engelsk	* litteraturstudie
<b>flowered</b> for the first time.	* blomstre	
In the <b>illuminated</b> <i>Lindisfarne Gospel</i> , <b>sculptered crosses</b>	* koloreret	* udhugget
like that at Bewcastle, the story of the recent conversion	*	* kors
and the first <b>prose work</b> written by an Englishman.	* prosaværk	
The eighth century saw the supremacy of Mercia, whose	*	
King Offa <b>drove</b> the Welsh behind the great <b>dyke / dike</b> that	* drive ng.	* dige
he built along the border from the mouth of Wye to the Dee.	*	
Then at the beginning of the ninth century the king of	*	
Wessex, Egbert, subdued the Celts of Devon and Cornwall,	*	
<b>20</b> <b>defeated</b> the Mercians <b>in battle</b> , and so became	* besejre ng.	* væbnet kamp
the first king of all England, at least <b>in name</b> .	* af navn	
For his <b>dominion</b> was <b>shadowy</b> .	* herredømme	* skyggeagtig
The English had been here for four hundred years, as long	* magt	
as the Romans, but they were still primitive farmers living	*	
in <b>scattered</b> villages and <b>townships</b> , their open ploughland	* spredt	* sognedistrikt
and meadows separated from those of their neighbours	*	
by forest and waste.	*	
There was no city life, for they <b>shunned</b> the <b>haunted ruins</b>	* undgå / sky ngt.	* hjem søge / bespøge ngt
of the Romans, though one Englishman at least was <b>moved</b>	* bevæge følelsesmæssigt	* ruin
<b>30</b> <b>by the sight of</b> the ruins of Bath:	* ved synet af ngt.	
<b>Wondrous</b> is its <b>wallstone</b> : <b>fates</b> have broken,	* forunderlig	* mursten
have <b>shattered</b> the city, the work of <b>giants</b> is <b>decaying</b> .	* vidunderlig	* skæbnesvangre hændelser
The roofs are fallen, the <b>towers</b> in ruins,	* kæmpe	* splintre ngt.
the towers with <b>barred</b> doors destroyed,	* slå ngt. i stumper og stykker	* forfalde
<b>frost</b> on the <b>mortar</b> , the <b>ramparts</b> down, fallen,	* tårn	* ( fæstnings- ) vold
<b>with age under-eaten</b> .	* stænget, tilgitret	
	* spærret ( med stang / stænger )	
	* frost	* mørtel
	* af alderdom	* nedbrudt

222 It is only a <b>fragment</b> , a <b>ruin</b> like the city it <b>laments</b> , but it is the most personal and <b>poignant</b> of all Old English poems.	* fragment * efterladt rest * begræde / jamre / brudstykke, stump sørge over ngt.
Without an organized central government and <b>efficient</b> army,	* skarp ( stikkende, bidende ) sindsbevægende * effektiv
the king was <b>dependent (up)on</b> the loyalty of local landowners,	* være afhængig af ngt.
the <b>earls</b> who governed the great divisions of the kingdom,	* jarl
the <b>thengs</b> ( or <b>thanes</b> ) who ranked below the earls,	* lensmand
and of the <b>(e)aldermen</b> – local <b>officials</b> – and bishops.	* rådmand * embedsmand
These 30 to 40 men composed his council, the <b>Witan</b> .	* angelsaksisk kongeråd
These farmers, <b>rooted</b> in the <b>soil</b> , however, no longer	* slå rødder rod fæste ( sig ) * jord
10 the <b>fierce</b> warriors who had <b>conquered</b> the Britons	* vild, barsk voldsom * besejre ngt.
four centuries before, were <b>ill-prepared</b> to <b>repel</b> even more	* dårligt forberedt til at- * afvise / frastøde ngt. slå ngt. tilbage
<b>ferocious</b> invaders than their <b>ancestors</b> had been.	* voldsom barsk * ane forfader
As the <b>fierce</b> and <b>ferocious</b> invasions continued,	* vild voldsom * voldsom vildskab / voldsomhed * voldsomhed hos ng. / ved ngt.
the <b>fierceness</b> and <b>ferocity</b> of the invaders	* vildskab / voldsomhed hos ng. / ved ngt.
and the <b>fierceness</b> and <b>ferosity</b> of their <b>repeated</b> invasions	* gentagen
were to <b>strike</b> the whole society <b>with horror</b> .	* slå / ramme ng. med * forfærdelse skræk
( History of England continues on page 341 )	
*	
*	
20 An <b>abbey</b> is a <b>group of</b> buildings <b>comprising</b> a church	* abbedi * gruppe af ngt. * omfatte ngt.
and a <b>monastery</b> under the <b>supervision</b> of an <b>abbot</b>	* munkekloster * abbed
or a <b>convent</b> under the supervision of an <b>abbess</b>	* nonnekloster * abbedisse
The church itself is also called an <b>abbey</b> .	* klosterkirke
A <b>priory</b> is either a monastery or a convent ranking below	* mindre kloster
an abbey and under the supervision of a <b>prior</b> or a <b>prioress</b>	* prior klosterforstander * priorinde < -inde
re`spectively.	
Years ago the bishop had <b>blessed</b> / <b>sanctified</b> the <b>site</b>	* velsigne / helliggøre > * sted >
<b>for</b> both the monastery and the convent.	* til ngt.
Each monk and nun have <b>set jobs</b> to do,	* faste > * ~ arbejdsopgaver
30 and many practices have <b>been sanctified</b> by tradition.	* blive helliggjort
Before every meal, the monks and the nuns <b>say grace</b> ,	* ~ bede bordbøn
and <b>bless</b> the food and drink.	* velsigne ngt.
Some believe they are <b>destined for</b> a life <b>devoted to</b> God.	* ( være ) skæbnebestemt til > * ( liv ) hengivet til ng.
Their opinions remain <b>unchanged</b> as they believe in	* ( meninger ) uforandret
the <b>unchanging</b> truth's of the Bible and its <b>unchangable</b> laws.	* uforandrende ( sandheder ) * uforanderlig ( lov )
A holy building or any place may be a <b>shrine of</b> a person,	* kultsted i forbindelse med ng.
( holy or famous ), or a <b>shine of</b> a place.	* - - - et sted
It may be a <b>shine to</b> Virgin Mary, or other famous person,	* kultsted til ære for ng.
and may be a <b>shine to</b> a miracle or other special event.	* - - - for ngt.

## A VIKING EXPEDITION

<sup>`vaiking</sup>

### 223 The Norse idolize (E& / -ise).

<sup>`aidélaiz</sup>

As the **Norsemen** practice **idolatry**, a variety of **images**,  
<sup>ai`dálêtri</sup>  
objects, places and **settings are sacred to** the Norse.

The **idolatrous** Norse **worship** various **idols** which may  
<sup>ai`dálêtrês</sup> <sup>`aidolz</sup>  
be images or other **material** objects or places representing

their **deities** and **sacred to** their gods and goddesses

**to** which their **worship** is **addressed**.

<sup>è`dresd</sup>

The **sacredness** of an idol **evokes** / **invokes awe**.

<sup>â~</sup>

At **sacred feasts** such as the **summer solstice**,

<sup>`sålstis</sup>

**10** and the **winter solstice**, the **spring equinox**

<sup>`i~kwinâks</sup>

and the **autumn equinox** the Norse **offer**.

At a **sacrificial** feast and ceremony, the Norse **offer (up)**

**sacrifices** to their gods.

When the Norsemen **sacrifice**, they **sacrifice** animals

and **precious sacred** objects to please their gods.

On special **occasions** they also **offer human sacrifices**.

The **sacrificial** animal or **sacrificial victim** is killed

and handled in a special way **at the offering**

when it is **offered** as a **sacrifice** to their gods.

**20** They hope the gods will accept their **offerings**

and **sacrifices**.

The Norse **make sacrifices to** their gods: *Odin*, the ruler  
of **Aesir** and god of war, poetry, knowledge, and wisdom –

*Thor*, the god of **thunder**, rain and farming, **represented**

riding a **chariot** drawn by goats and **wielding** *Mjölner*,

the **defender** of Aesir, **destined to** kill and be killed by

the **Midgard Serpent** – *Freya*, the goddess of love, beauty,

and **fecundity** / **fertility** and leader of the **Valkyries**.

<sup>fi`kûnditi</sup> <sup>fêtilêti</sup>

<sup>val`kiêriz</sup> / <sup>`valkiriz</sup>

Besides the chiefs or chieftains, the priests have

**30** probably **wielded** considerable **power** within the tribe.

The priests were **in charge of** the sacrificial ceremonies

when the Norse **made sacrifices to** their goddess of fecundity

**to ensure** (eA: **insure** ) the **fecundity** / **fertility of** the **soil**,

the **crops**, and the **domestic animals**.

**For them to survive** / their **surviving** the winter,

the Norse **depended on ripe crops being / to be harvested**.

Most of them spent all their life in a **farming community**,

and everybody **depended on** farmers being / **to be successful**.

\* viking

\* tog

\* nordboerne

\* tilbede hellige genstande

dyrke afguder / gudebilleder

\* nordboere

\* afgudsdyrkelse

\* afbildning

\* åsted

\* være hellig for ng.

\* afgudsdyrkende \* tilbede ng.

\* gud / -ebillede

hellig genstand / sted

\* materiel

\* gud / -dom \* helliget / indviet til ng.

\* tilbedelse

\* rette ng. til ng.

\* hellighed

\* fremkalde /

\* indgyde > \* ærefrygt

- mane >

\* hellig

\* fest m. spisning

\* sommersolhverv

\* vintersolhverv

\* forårsjævndøgn

\* efterårs-

\* ofre

\* offer-

\* ofre ng. >

\* offergave

\* til ng.

\* ofre

\* ... ng.

\* dyr, dyrebar

\* hellig

skattet

indviet

\* ved >

\* lejligheder

\* ofre ng. \* menneskeoffer

\* offer-

\* helliget

\* offer

indviet

\* ofring

\* ofre ng.

\* offergave

\* offergave

\* =

\* bringe offer til

\* asaslægten

aserne

\* torden

\* fremstille ng. i færd med at -

\* stridsvogn

\* bruge, håndtere

svinge

\* forsvarer

\* skæbnebestemt til at -

\* Midgårdsormen \* Freja

\* frugtbarhed

\* valkyrie

\*

\* udøve >

\* magt

\* være ansvarlig / stå for ng.

\* bringe offer

\* til ng.

\* for at -

\* sikre ng.

\* frugtbarned af >

\* jord

\* afgrøde

\* hus-

\* dyr

\* for ng. at -

\* overleve ( vinter )

~ for at ng. ( kan ) >

\* være afhængig

\* moden

\* afgrøde

\* høste <

af ng. ⇔ at -

\* landbrugs-

\* fællesskab, samfund

\* << at ng.

\* være succesfuld

<b>224</b> Although the Norse <b>make sacrifices</b> ( <b>to</b> their goddess of fertility ) <b>to</b> ensure <b>fecund</b> / <b>fertile</b> soil, <b>fecund</b> / <b>fertile</b> crops	* bringe ofre ( til ng.)		
<b>fecund</b> / <b>fertile</b> animals, and a good <b>harvest</b> ,	* for at -	* frugtbar	* =
continuing <b>drought(s)</b> and <b>savage pest</b> attacks,	* tørke / -periode	* voldsom	* skadedyr
<b>at times</b> <b>play havoc</b> with their agricultural production.	* til tider	* forvolde gene / ulempe for ng. anrette skade / ødelæggelse på ng.	
If the gods feel <b>insulted</b> by <b>ordinary mortals</b> ,	* fornærmet	* almindelige dødelige	
they may <b>wreak revenge</b> / <b>vengeance</b> ( <b>on</b> ordinary mortals ).	* udøve > ~ hævne sig	* hævn	* på ng.    * dødelig
Crops <b>wither</b> as draught and pest <b>wither</b> the plants.	* visne		* få ng til at visne
Although the Norse <b>make</b> all possible <b>sacrifices to</b>	* bringe offer for at -		
<b>10 appease</b> the gods, and stop causing <b>crop failure(s)</b> /	* formilde ng.		* misvækst
<b>failure of the harvest</b> / <b>failure of</b> (the) <b>crops</b> , the <b>ravages of</b>	* =		* ødelæggelserne fra
drought and pests <b>cause</b> / <b>create</b> { <b>havoc</b> / <b>mayhem on</b> crops	* forårsage / skabe / anrette / forvolde >		* skade / ødelæggelse på ng.
// <b>wreak</b> { <b>havoc</b> / <b>mayhen</b> / <b>destruction on</b> crops.	* anrette / forvolde >		* =
<b>Famine</b> follows in the <b>wake of</b> drought and pest attacks.	* hungersnød		* i kølvandet på
When times of great <b>austerity</b> threaten, many a Northman's	* afsavn		* nordbo
<b>thoughts turn in</b> the <b>direction of</b> the possibilities	* tanke	* vende sig >	* i retning af / mod ng.
and opportunities <b>abroad</b> by becoming a Viking.	* i udlandet		* blive ng.
The <b>austerities of crop failure(s)</b> and the hope for	* afsavn		* misvækst
<b>booty, loot</b> and <b>plunder</b> make groups of Scandinavians	* plyndringgods	* =	* =
<b>20 turn</b> their <b>minds</b> / <b>thoughts to Viking expeditions</b> .	* vende sindet / tankerne mod ng.		* vikingetogt
<b>Turning</b> their <b>efforts to</b> expeditions, the Vikings in <b>Sweden</b> ,	* rette bestræbelserne mod ng.		* Sverige
<b>turn</b> their <b>attention to</b> the coasts east of the <b>Baltic Sea</b> .	* vende opmærksomheden mod ng.		* Østersøen
The <b>Swedish</b> Vikings cross the Baltic and <b>raid</b> and settle	* svensk	* foretage overraskelsesangreb / plyndring	
in the Baltic lands, establish the <b>Russian Kievan</b> state,	* russisk		* kiefsk
and trade with <b>Constantinoble</b> , where they <b>provide</b>	* Konstantinobel		* tilvejebringe / være forsyning til ng.
the <b>imperial guard</b> .	* kejserlig		* garde
From <b>Norway</b> the Vikings cross the <b>Atlantic</b> ( Ocean )	* Norge		* Atlanten / -terhavet
and the North Sea and settle in <b>Iceland</b> and <b>Greenland</b> .	* Island		* Grønland
The <b>Norwegian</b> Vikings raid and settle in the north	* norsk		
<b>30</b> and west of the <b>British Isles</b> and eventually <b>conquer</b>	* de Britiske Øer		* besejre / erobre >
<b>Scotland</b> , Northern England and <b>Ireland</b> .	* skotland		* irland
From Denmark the Vikings raid and settle in East England	*		
and in the <b>North of France</b> .	* Nordfrankrig		
These Vikings eventually <b>adopt</b> Christianity.	* tilegne sig ng.		
As many of them at the same time still worship	*		
their <b>Norse</b> gods, the Christian English people consider	* oldnordiske		
the Nothmen to be <b>idolaters</b> , and accuse them of <b>idolatry</b> .	* afgudsdyrker		* afgudsdyrkning



## 225 Figuring on / planning on ( going on ) an expedition,

some Vikings **plan to go on a predatory expedition.**

**Plans for a maritime expedition are soon in preparation.**

Careful **preparation(s) for the expedition is (are) essential**

so they **hold preparatory meetings to plan the expedition,**

**plan what to bring, where and when to go etc.**

They need time to **prepare, to plan and get ready.**

They make **preparatory studies and do preparatory work**

**preparatory to each meeting and step in the preparations.**

**10 Navigators** of former expeditions have **set themselves**

**the task of preparing marine / maritime / nautical charts.**

As the Vikings **make preparations for** an expedition,

**superb naval architects, famous for their naval architecture,**

**make preparations to build and launch two Viking ships.**

So in the **naval shipyard, the shipbuilders embark on**  
building these **flat-bottomed longboats; excellent warships**

**suitable for raids that provide the Scandinavian countries**

**with naval strength, making them great naval / sea powers.**

At the **launch, the ships are moved into the sea on rollers.**

**20 Preparing for the expedition, the Vikings prepare to**

**go on a long voyage, and carry out raids on foreign coasts.**

Heavy boxes and **barrels are hoisted aboard by a hoist.**

Long before **preparations for the expedition are due for**

**completion, every Viking prepares himself for the expedition,**  
and **prepares himself to go to sea, or run away to sea.**

Everybody works hard **in preparation for the expedition.**

**Ice, wint(e)ry and blustering weather, blustering winds**

and **blustering ( crests of ) huge / mountainous waves**

prevent the **longships from putting ( out ) to sea.**

**30 Blustery weather, freezing, icy and blustery conditions**

prevent the Vikings from **going on board and put to sea.**

Eventually the sun **turns winter into spring.**

When winter **turns into spring, and blustery icy winds**

prevent neither a **launch of the ships nor the Vikings**

from **preparing the vessels, the chief embarks his warriors.**

The Vikings, all **good sailors, are well prepared as they**  
**embark, start rowing, and hoist the sails.**

A **poor sailor remains on dry land** while his **eyes follow**  
the **wake of the longships putting out to go foreign.**

\* forestille sig / ~ have planer om > \* togt

\* ~ have en plan om ( at ) ngt. \* plyndrings- \* =

\* planer for > \* maritimt ( togt ) \* under forberedelse

\* forberedelse til ngt. \* fundamental ( vigtig )

\* holde > \* forberedende \* møde om at - \* planlægge  
ngt.

\* planlægge hvxx

\* forberede sig \* planlægge \* gøre sig / blive parat

\* forberedende \* =

\* som forberedelse til ngt. \* skridt > \* i forberedelserne  
inden

\* søfarer \* sætte sig >

\* den opgave \* udarbejde ngt. \* søkort

\* gøre forberedelser til ngt.

\* fremragende \* skibskonstruktør \* skibsbygningskunst

\* ... at - \* søsætte > \* vikingeskib

\* på > \* orlogsværft \* skibs- \* gå i gang med ngt.  
bygger

\* fladbundet \* langbåd \* krigsskib

\* egnet til > \* overraskelsesangreb \* forsyne ng. >

\* med > \* flådestyrke \* flåde- / sømagt

\* søsætning \* transportere ngt. > \* ud i ngt. \* på ruller

\* træffe forberedelser til ngt. \* ... at -

\* tage på > \* lang \* sørejse \* udføre > \* togt  
~ langfart

\* tønde \* hejst \* ombord \* hejseværk

\* forberedelser til ngt. \* være fastsat / forventet til >

\* afslutning \* forberede sig på ngt.  
fuldendelse

\* ... at - \* stikke til søs \* løbe hjemmefra  
( som sømand ) og stikke til søs

\* som forberedelse til ngt.

\* is \* vinterlig \* stormende \* =

\* stormende \* brusende \* kam \* enorm \* bølge  
susende buldrende top

\* langskib \* stikke til søs

\* stormfuld \* frysende \* ispræget \* (vejr-) betingelse  
/ -kold

\* gå > \* ombord \* stikke til søs ( med fartøj )

\* forvandle ngt. til ngt. \* vinter

\* blive / \* blæsende \* iskold  
forvandles til ngt. stormende

\* søsætning af ( skib )

\* klargøre > \* fartøj \* indskibe / ombordtage ng.

\* søstærk sømand / person \* velforberedt

\* gå ombord \* hejse > \* sejl

\* ikke søstærk ... \* på ( det tørre ) land \* kølvand

\* stikke til søs \* ~ sejle til fremmede egne

## THE NORTHMEN

**226** At the **return** of spring, these **sea warriors** and **pirates**,  
go on **Viking expeditions** across the sea and up along rivers,  
**sacking** places, **plundering** and **looting as** they go.

`**Navigating** on the ( **open** ) **sea**, **prepared** for fight,  
and **prepared for the worst**, the **well-prepared** Vikings  
are **prepared to risk** their **lives** ( **to complete** a **mission** ).

At every raid they **risk losing** their **lives**.

As the Vikings ships are **fast** and **manoeuvrable** E/A -neu-,  
mê`nu-vêrêbêl  
the Vikings are difficult to **engage in** a **naval battle**.

**10** The Vikings have a few instruments of **navigation at sea**.

By means of **navigational skills** and **navigational aids**,  
using their **nautical charts** and **nautical terms**,  
the Vikings **navigate** ( their **way** ) **across** the North Sea.

**Sailing** at night they **navigate by** the stars, **provided**  
( of course ) ( **that** ) the sky doesn't **cloud over** or **haze over**.

The ships **navigate** / **sail along** the east coast of England  
looking for a place suitable to raid, **loot**, **plunder** and **sack**.

Having to **manoeuvre** ( the ship ) **round a promontory** /  
mê`nu-vê prâmênt(ê)ri  
a **headland**, the **steerman** performs a **skilful manoeuvre** by

**20** **turning** the **steering oar** so the ship **turns** ( **to** ) **starboard**.

Having crossed a **bay** and passed a **reef**, a **sandbank**,  
and a **spit**, the steerman **turns to** the **port** into an **estuary**.  
`est\$uêri

At the **mouth of the river**, the Vikings **lower** the sail  
and start to **row** ( the boat ) **upriver**.  
ûp`rivê

As the sail **lowers**, the chief **turns** ( ) **over** a **raid** in his **mind**.

Further on, the **navigable** river **turns to** the north;  
it **turns** north into **meanders** of the river and a **tributary**.  
mi`andêz

**Navigation** is difficult further up the river,  
so a **mastheadman** **hoists himself to** the **head of** the **mast**  
**30** **to assess** / **estimate** the **navigability** of the river,

and signal if the river becomes dangerous to **navigate** / **sail**.

After a **sail inland**, when a monastery **turns up**,  
in`land  
the **savage** vikings immediately **turn** their **attention to** that.

After a voyage of many a **nautical mile**, a monestary is  
a most welcome **target for** a raid.

While the **tide** is **turning** / E& while the **tide is on** the **turn**,  
the Vikings **turn** ( ) **over** a raid in the **early hours**.

They **plan** that they **raid** the monastery in the **small hours**.

\* nordboer, der kom til England

\* tilbagekomst \* søkriker \* pirat  
sørøver

\* vikingetogt

\* plyndre ng. \* plyndre \* = \* som ng. kommer frem  
& på ngs. færd

\* navigere, sejle \* på havet / \* forberedt på /  
beregne kurs, finde vej det åbne hav villig til ng.  
\* velforberedt \* forberedt på > \* det værste

\* ... at - \* & sætte ng. på spil ( for at - \* fuldføre \* = )

\* risikere at - \* miste livet

\* vikingeskib \* manøvre dygtig

\* engagere ng. i > \* søslag

\* navigation

\* navigationsmæssig \* ... hjælpemiddel

\* søkort \* søfartsudtryk

\* navigere / sejle / beregne kurs / finde vej \* over ng.

\* sejle \* ... ved hjælp af ng. \* forudsat >

\* at - \* blive dækket af > \* skyer \* dis

\* navigere / sejle langs ng.

\* plyndre ng. \* = \* =

\* manøvrere ( skib ) uden om > \* forbjerg

\* pynt, næs \* styrmand \* udføre > \* dygtig \* manøvre  
forbjerg

\* dreje > \* styre- \* åre \* dreje mod > \* styrbord

\* bugt \* klipperev \* sandbanke

\* landtange \* dreje mod bagbord \* flodmunding

\* flodmunding \* sænke ng. \* sejl

\* ro \* op ad floden

\* sænke sig \* overveje \* overraskelsesangreb  
vende og dreje

\* sejlbar \* dreje mod

\* << \* slyngning \* biflod

\* sejlads \* navigatør  
søfarer

\* mastetopmand \* hæve sig op til > \* ~ toppen af  
masten

\* bedømme / vurdere > \* sejlbarhed

\* besejle ng.

\* sejltur \* ind i landet \* vise sig

\* vilde \* vende sin opmærksomhed mod ng.

\* sømil

\* mål for ng.

\* tidevandet vender / skifter

\* vende og dreje / \* i de tidlige morgentimer  
overveje ng.

\* planlægge at - \* foretage overraskelses- \* =  
angreb på ng.

<b>227 When conditions are at their optimum</b> , the steerman	* ... optimale / bedst mulige
<b>turns</b> the ship <b>aport</b> to <b>turn</b> it <b>towards</b> the shore.	* dreje ngt. mod bagbord * vende / dreje mod > * kyst
So as the <b>encroaching tide affords optimal / optimum conditions</b> , the Viking <b>raiders</b> start rowing prepared to	* indstrømmende tidevand * byde på * optimale de bedste
<b>launch / carry out / stage a raid on / against</b> the monestary	* betingelser * (overraskende) angriber
<b>with speed and decision / decisiveness.</b>	* iværksætte / udføre / gennemføre > * overraskelsesangreb på ng.
<b>Turning over the wale on the starboardside</b>	* med hurtighed * beslutsomhed
and the <b>port side</b> , the Vikings <b>turn out</b> from the boats.	* vælte sig over * ræling * på styrbordsside
<b>Raising and lowering their shields and swords,</b>	* bagbordsside * tørne ud
<b>10 acting like savages</b> , the raiders attack the monastery	* hæve * sænke * skjold
in a <b>savage</b> raid.	* vildmand
A monk <b>cries havoc</b> , but the monks are totally <b>unprepared</b>	* brutal
<b>for an attack</b> , and have no time to <b>prepare.</b>	* råbe fare på færde * uforberedt >
As they are totally <b>unprepared</b> , there is <b>complete mayhem</b>	* på ngt. * gøre forberedelser
when the savage Vikings <b>turn the austere monks out</b>	* uforberedt * kaos, vold * ødelæggelse
<b>of / from their austere cells.</b>	* drive ng. ud * alvorsfuld streng, strikt * spartansk
Believing in the <b>power of prayer</b> , the monks <b>lead a pious</b>	* fra / af ngt.
and <b>austere life of prayer</b> and <b>solitude</b> in the <b>calm</b> of	* bønnens magt * føre / leve > * fromt
the <b>cloister</b> in order to <b>achieve / attain</b> spiritual <b>purity.</b>	* = * liv med > * bøn * ensomhed * ro * stilhed
<b>20 Monks are often employed in praying</b>	* kloster, klosterliv * opnå ngt. * renhed
They get up early in the morning to <b>say</b> their <b>prayers.</b>	* søjlegang omkring klostergård
<b>Prayers (pl.) are around all the 24 hours.</b>	* være optaget af at - * bede
Living a <b>cloistered</b> life, the monks regard the <b>seclusion</b> of	* bede > * bøn
the monastery as a <b>refuge</b> : a <b>refuge from the outside world.</b>	* bønnemøde * hele døgnetrundt
Some <b>reclusive</b> monks live in <b>seclusion</b> as <b>hermits.</b>	* afsondret beskyttet * afsondrethed
As <b>self-contained recluses</b> , they <b>take refuge in praying.</b>	* fristed * ... fra > * ~ verden udenfor
( The later <b>friars</b> live in a <b>friary.</b> )	* eneboeragtig * i afsondrethed * eneboer
( Muslims kneel on a small <b>carpet</b> , a <b>prayer rug</b>	* selvhjulpen * enspænder * tage tilflugt i > * bede
or <b>prayer mat</b> when they are saying prayers. )	* -stændig / -tilstrækkelig * -ekloster
<b>30 When a monk kneels in prayer</b> , his <b>thoughts</b> and <b>prayers</b>	* tæppe * bedetæppe
<b>are supposed to be with</b> God and people in <b>distress.</b>	* =
When the monks <b>pray</b> , they <b>pray ( that )</b> evil be <b>averted.</b>	* i bøn * tanker * bønner
They <b>pray for</b> people in need and <b>pray for</b> peace <b>on earth.</b>	* være med ng. * i nød nødstedt
They say a <b>prayer for</b> the poor, <b>the sick</b> and the dead.	* bede * bede til at > * afværge / forhindre / afbøde / bortlede ngt.
To some people prayers seem likely to remain little more	* bede for ng. * bede for ngt. * på jorden jordkloden
than <b>pious hopes</b> and <b>pious wishes.</b>	* bede en bøn for ng. * de syge
<b>Unimpressed</b> by religious influence, <b>remaining unaffected</b>	*
by <b>piety</b> and <b>pious</b> speech, some people <b>remain</b> or turn into	* from håb * ... ønske
disbelievers: <b>agnostics</b> or <b>atheists.</b>	* uimponeret * forblive + adj. * upåvirket
	* fromhed * skinhellig * forblive + subst.
	* hellighed
	*

## 228 Some monasteries **possess** a **plenitude** of **wealth**.

The monks **take good care of** the **treasures** ( norm. pl. )  
and **valuables** (pl.) of the monastery.

The various objects used **in** ( **acts of** ) **worship** are kept in  
the **sacristy** also called the **vestry** where the priest also  
**prepares for** (the) **service** by **putting on** special **clothes**.

**Prayer books** are kept in the sacristy.

The most important prayer to say is **the Lord's Prayer**,  
that Jesus taught the people who followed him , that begins,

### 10 ' Our Father ... '

In order to **forsake carnal desires**, some monks  
**bury** themselves in prayer and work.

The **sacristan** looks after the holy objects,  
**prepares** the altar **for** services and **empties** the **poor box**.

**Sacred music** and **sacred songs** accompany the services.

The monks **take particular care** of a **sacred shrine**  
made of **solid silver**.

The monks **treasure** a **sacred relic** in the shrine as they  
strongly believe in the divine powers of sacred relics.

20 Especially **conspicuous** by his **recalcitrance**,  
ri' kalsitrêns  
one **desperate** monk **desperately holds on to** the shrine.

It suddenly **occurs to** the Viking chief **to offer a sacrifice**  
**to** their gods so the **recalcitrant** and **blustering** monk  
ri' kalsitrênt  
is **drawn aside** and **turned aside**.

Having a **despairing** look in his eyes, looking **despairingly**  
at the chief, the monk **utters a cry of despair**.

The monk **urgently asks for mercy**.

Although he **begs, cries**, and **pleads for mercy**,  
the Viking chief **shows no mercy to** the monk.

30 **Despairing of** ( having ) **mercy on** their poor brother  
chosen as an **offering**, the other monks **despair of** him.

There is absolutely **mayhem** when the chief, **in** a short  
**sacred ritual**, **offers** the monk as a **sacrifice to** their gods.

**Shocked by / at** the **savagery** of the **offering**, the monks  
pray, ' **God have mercy on** him – God have mercy on his soul.

Other monks who **hesitate to give** ( ) **up / hand** ( ) **over**  
a **precious object** ( **to** the Vikings ) are unhesitatingly  
**slaughtered on the spot in savage killings**.

\* besidde > \* masse / overdådighed af ngt. \* rigdom

\* tage godt vare på ngt. \* kostbarheder

\* værdigenstande

\* i > ( handling ) \* tilbedelse, andagt  
gudsdyrkelse

\* sakristi

\* forberede sig på / til ngt. \* gudstjeneste \* tage tøj på

\* bønnebog

\* Fader Vor

\*

\*

\* forsage > \* kødelig \* lyst

\* begrave sig i ngt.

\* kirketjener  
degn

\* forberede / ordne / \* tømme ngt. \* kirke- /  
klargøre ngt. til ngt. fattigbøse  
\* kirkemusik \* religiøse ...

\* tage særligt vare på / \* helligt \* skrin  
være øm overfor >  
\* massiv \* sølv

\* gemme ngt. \* helligt \* relikvie

\* sætte stor pris på

\* iøjefaldende, bemærkelsesværdig \* genstridighed

\* desperat \* = \* holde fast i ngt.

\* falde ng. ind at - \* ofre ngt. > \* offergave

\* til ng. \* genstridig \* højtrøstet  
højtråbende  
\* trukket til side \* gennet til side

\* fortvivlet \* =

\* ytre / udstøde > \* råb, skrig af > \* fortvivlelse

\* indtrængende \* ( bede ) om nåde

\*

\*

\* vise ingen nåde overfor ng.

\* opgive håbet om ( at ) ngt. \* nåde

\* offer / -gave \* opgive håbet for ng.

\* kaos, forvirring \* i >  
frygt

\* helligt \* ritual \* ofre ng. \* offer / -gave til ng.

\* chokeret af / over ngt. \* vildskab af ngt. \* ofring

\* have barmhjertighed / medlidenhed med /  
vise nåde overfor ng.

\* tøve med at - \* ~ aflevere > \* overdrage >

\* værdifuld \* genstand \* ( til ng. )  
~ værdigenstand

\* nedslagtet \* på stedet \* i > \* barbarisk \* drab

<b>229 Causing / creating / wreaking } mayhem,</b>	* skabe, forårsage / = / = }	* kaos, ophidselse, frygt
the Vikings then <b>turn</b> the surviving monks <b>out of</b> the buildings,	* drive ng. ud af ngt.	
and <b>turn ( ) away</b> the <b>terrified</b> monks.	* drive ng. væk	* skrækslagen
The fleeing monks <b>tremble at</b> the <b>thought</b> of their brothers	* skælve ved	
having <b>made the { final / supreme / ultimate } sacrifice.</b>	* yde det { afgørende / højeste / ultimative } ~ ofre livet	* offer
<b>Causing / creating / wreaking } havoc,</b> the vikings	* skabe, anrette > / = / = }	* ravage, ødelæggelse
<b>play havoc with</b> the monastery as they start <b>plundering.</b>	* anrette skade på ngt.	* plyndre
<b>Wreaking { havoc / mayhem / destruction } on</b> the build>	* anrette, forvolde > { * skade, / = / = } på ngt. ødelæggelse	
ings, the <b>rapacious</b> Vikings <b>plunder</b> the monastery.	* rov-, grisk grådighed	* plyndre ngt.
<b>10 Wreaking { havoc / mayhem / destruction everywhere,</b>	* anrette, forvolde > { * skade, / = / = } ødelæggelse	
the vikings <b>sack</b> the monastery / E& <b>turn</b> the monastery <b>over.</b>	* plyndre ngt.	
<b>`Ransacking</b> the monastery, the vikings <b>rapaciously turn</b>	* ransage / gennemplyndre ngt.	* rov-, grisk vendte > grådigt
every room <b>upside `down</b> , hoping for valuables to <b>turn `up.</b>	* ngt. op og ned / på hovedet op og ned på / endevende ngt.	* dukke op
<b>Ransacking</b> every room <b>for</b> valuables, they <b>turn ( ) `out</b>	* ransage / gennemsøge for ngt.	* tømme ngt.
every room where the monks used to lead a life of <b>austerity.</b>	* strengthed afsavn	
Having <b>caused / created / wreaked (wrought) } havoc on</b>	* anrette / forvolde >	* skade / ødelæggelse på ngt.
the monastery, the vikings now to <b>turn to</b> the nearby <b>convent.</b>	* vende sig mod ngt.	* nonnekloster
<b>Rapacity</b> now <b>drives</b> the Vikings <b>to</b> attack the convent,	* rov-, griskhed grådighed	* drive ng. til at -
<b>Driven by insatiable rapacity,</b> they <b>turn (up)on</b> the nuns.	* drevet af >	* umættelig * angribe ng.
Having <b>closed</b> the <b>shutters</b> and <b>barricaded</b> the doors,	* lukke >	* skodder
<b>20</b> the nuns have <b>barricaded</b> themselves <b>in.</b>	* barrikadere sig	
Having <b>turned</b> their dogs <b>loose</b> , they let their <b>fate(s)</b>	* slippe ng. / ngt. løs	* skæbne(r)
<b>turn (up)on</b> a <b>pack</b> of <b>fierce</b> dogs as their only <b>shield.</b>	* afhænge af ngt.	* kobbel * bister * værn
The Vikings just <b>turn over</b> the <b>barricades.</b>	* dreje / vælte ngt.	* barrikade
When these <b>turn over</b> , the <b>savage</b> dogs attack the Vikings,	* vælte	* vild rasende
but in spite of their <b>fierceness / savageness</b> , the dogs havn't	* vildskab	
<b>got a fair chance up against</b> the <b>keen</b> swords of the Vikings.	* have > * retfærdig * chance * op imod ngt. * skarp	
One <b>inattentive</b> Viking, though, is <b>savaged to death</b>	* uopmærksom	* overfalde / * ( til ) døde skambide ng.
by the dogs.		
Although the violence <b>gives</b> all the nuns <b>a turn</b> , they <b>resist</b>	* gøre ng. bange	* gøre modstand modsætte sig
<b>30</b> with a <b>savagery</b> that <b>surprises</b> the Vikings.	* vildskab	* ngt. overrasker ng.
Of course the nuns eventually have to <b>turn ( ) `over to</b>	* overdrage ngt. til ng.	
the Vikings all kinds of valuables <b>precious to</b> the nuns.	* være dyrebart for ng. , & være ng. dyrebart	
Many of the treasures have <b>survived</b> the <b>ravages of time.</b>	* overleve >	* tidens tand
Those nuns who <b>hesitate to</b> hand over the goods	* tøve med at -	
are <b>savagely</b> attacked and beaten.	* brutalt, rasende voldsomt	
The nuns <b>worry / are worried ( that )</b> the situation	* bekymre sig om / være bekymret for at - ngt.	
could <b>turn</b> more violent, <b>highly dangerous</b> and <b>fatal.</b>	* blive	* ~ livsfarlig * =

## 230 Confident that God **protects** his **worshippers**

in his own house, the prioress **flees to** the church to **pray**.

Having **fled to** what she believes to be **the safety of** the church, she kneels down, and **prays to** God.

The novice **prays for** a **gracious act** of **God**.

Hoping to be **in safety**, she **prays for** her **fellow sisters**.

She **prays to** God **for** an end to their **suffering** (U).

She **prays to** see an end to their **sufferings** (pl.).

She **prays** ( **that** ) God will be **gracious to** them

**10** She **prays the Lord** will make an end to their sufferings,

**save** them **from** rape, and **save** them **from** being killed

by **turning** the church **into** a **sanctuary** for the nuns.

' Be **merciful** - **save** our **lives**,' the prioress **prays**.

She prays ( **that** ) God will **create, provide**, and **offer** a **safe`haven** ( **for** all of them ).

She prays that the church will be a **safe place** where they can **seek sanctuary** and **take sanctuary**.

She prays the church will be a safe **place of refuge**:  
a place **safe for** the nuns to **seek / take refuge in**,  
`refju~d\$

**20** and **safe for** them **to take / seek refuge from** the vikings.

She prays the nuns will be **safe** in the church, **safe from** the Vikings and **safe from** being **harmed**.

She prays that a miracle will **turn** the Vikings **away**.

God **grant** ( subj. ) that her **prayer** be **granted**.

The Vikings eventually **turn** the nuns **into** the church.

The nuns **huddle** together **secure in the knowledge that** **nothing short of** a miracle **can save** them.

**Praying to be** saved by divine intervention, the nuns **command** themselves **to God**.

**30** They **pin** their `faith on **merciful** God.

Nevertheless the nuns feel nervous and **insecure**,  
insi`kjuê left alone **in the power of** the Norse it seems.

A deep **sense of despair** **overwhelms** the nuns.  
ëuvê welmz

Totally **at the mercy of** the Norse, the nuns feel **abandoned** and **insecure** even if they **make the sign of the cross**.

**Entreating** God, the nuns **entreat** God **to** save them.

' **Save** our **soules**,' they **entreat, crossing themselves**.

' **Have mercy on** us,' they **entreat** God as they let out **groans of despair** and **dismay**.

\* holde hånden over \* tilbeder

\* flygte til ngt. \* bede

\* = \* sikkerhed

\* bede til ng.

\* bede for ngt. \* nådig \* gerning af > \* Gud  
imødekomme

\* i sikkerhed \* ... for > \* medsøstre

\* bede til ng. for ngt. \* lidelse

\* bede til at - \* lidelser

\* = \* nådig mod / overfor ng.  
imødekomme overfor ng.

\* = \* Herren ( her Gud )

\* redde ng. fra ngt. \* ... at -

\* forvandle ngt. til > \* tilflugtssted  
fristed

\* barmhjertig \* redde ngs. liv \* bede

\* skabe > \* skaffe >

\* tilbyde > \* tilflugtssted ( for ng. )

\* sikkert sted

\* søge / tage tilflugt

\* tilflugtssted

\* sikkert for ng. \* søge / tage tilflugt i ngt.

\* sikkert for ng. \* ... fra ng.

\* være i sikkerhed

\* ... for ng. \* ... at - \* gøre ng. fortræd

\* drive / jage ng. bort

\* ( Gud ) give \* bøn \* ( blive ) imødekommet

\* drive ng. ind i ngt.

\* klumpe sig / \* i sikker forvisning om at -  
krybe sammen

\* intet bortset fra \* redde ng.  
kun

\* bede til at -

\* give sig i Guds vold

\* sætte sin lid ( tiltro ) til ng. \* barmhjertig

\* usikker

\* i ngs. vold

\* følelse ( af ) > \* fortvivelse \* overvælde ng.  
håbløshed

\* overladt til ngs. nåde \* forladt

\* usikker \* ~ gøre korsets tegn

\* trygle / bede / bønfalde ng. \* - - - ng. til at -

\* frelse ngt. \* trygle etc. \* ~ gøre korsets tegn

\* have barmhjertighed / medlidenhed med / \* ... ng.  
vise nåde overfor ng.

\* støn af > \* desperation \* lidelse, bekymring

<b>231</b> The prioress <b>implores</b> Jesus and <b>Blessed Virgin Mary.</b> She <b>implores</b> her <b>Saviour</b> and his mother <b>to</b> help them. ' Help us,' she <b>implores</b> ( the <b>Saviour</b> ). <b>Begging</b> for help, all the nuns <b>begs</b> Him <b>for</b> help. They <b>beg</b> an <b>ultimate favour from our Saviour.</b> <b>Begging</b> an <b>ultimate favour of</b> Him, they <b>beg to be saved.</b> They <b>beg the Lord to save</b> their <b>lives</b> , and <b>save</b> them <b>from thrall(I)dom / bondage / slavery.</b> <b>Begging that Our Lord</b> will <b>save</b> them <b>from</b> the Vikings, <b>10</b> they <b>beg</b> that he will <b>save</b> them <b>from</b> being killed, or <b>carried off</b> as <b>thralls subjected to thrall (&lt;dom )</b> etc. The Norse aristocracy <b>hold / have</b> people <b>in thrall (&lt;dom )</b> / <b>bondage / slavery.</b> The Vikings <b>thrall / enslave</b> their <b>captives.</b> As they <b>put</b> them <b>in thrall (&lt;dom ) / bondage / slavery</b> and also <b>carry on thrall / slave `trade</b> , they either <b>sell</b> their captives <b>into thrall (&lt;dom ) / bondage / slavery</b> , or <b>keep</b> them <b>to themselves</b> as <b>thrall / slave `labour.</b> <b>Kept in thrall (&lt;dom ) / bondage / slavery</b> , and doing <b>20 thrall / slave `labour, thralls / bond(s)men / &lt;women /</b> <b>slaves</b> are <b>thralls to</b> their <b>masters.</b> Being <b>in</b> ( their master's ) <b>thrall</b> , they are <b>in thrall to</b> a <b>slave driver</b> , or <b>to</b> an <b>`overseer</b> of slaves. The overseer <b>cracks</b> the <b>whip.</b> <b>Disobedient</b> and <b>insubordinate</b> slaves <b>are subjected to</b> <b>whipping, lashing</b> , or other harsh punishment(s). Being <b>whipped</b> or <b>lashed</b> , a slave receives a number of <b>whips</b> with a <b>whip</b> or <b>lashes</b> with a whip, a <b>stick</b> , rope etc. <b>Being at the mercy of</b> the Vikings, <b>30</b> the nuns <b>ready</b> themselves <b>for</b> the <b>worst.</b> Turning to the <b>Northmen</b> , the nuns <b>beg for mercy.</b> Having <b>readied</b> themselves <b>to</b> face the worst, the nuns <b>beg</b> mercy <b>of</b> the Chief; they <b>beg</b> him <b>for</b> mercy. They <b>plead with</b> the chief <b>to have mercy on</b> them. ' <b>Have mercy on</b> us,' they <b>implore.</b> ' <b>Spare</b> our <b>lives</b> ,' they <b>implore</b> the Chief, hoping they will <b>spare</b> them their <b>lives</b> , and <b>spare</b> them a <b>life in thralldom / bondage / slavery .</b>	* bede / bønfalde / trygle ng. * hellig * Jomfru Maria * ... ng. > * frelser * om at - * bede etc. ( ng.) * frelseren * tigge og bede / * - - - ng. om ngt. trygle om ngt. * ... ng. om ngt. * ultimativ * tjeneste af > * vor frelser sidste, afgørende * bede om > * ... af ng. * ... om at - * blive reddet / frelst * ... ng. > * Herren * om at - * ... ngs. liv * frelse / redde ng. fra ngt. * trældom / slaveri * ... om at - * ... ng. fra ng. * = * bortføre ng. som > * træl * underkastet > * trældom * holde / have folk i trældom ~ holde trælle * slaveri ( & holde slaver ) * ~ gøre ng. til træl / slave * tilfangetagen * sætter ng. i trældom / slaveri ~ gøre ng. til træl / slave * drive > * slave handel. * sælge ng. > * til trældom / slaveri ~ som træl / slave * beholde ngt. selv * trælle- / slave- * arbejdskraft * holde ng. > * trældom / slaveri * trælle / slave - * arbejde * træl * -kvinde * trælbunden til ng. * herre * i ngs. vold * = * ... foged / vogter * & forvalter * smælde med > * pisken ~ få folk til at arbejde hårdt * ulydig * opsætsig * blive udsat for > * piskning * piskning * ( blive ) pisket * pisket * piskeslag * pisk * slag * stok, pind * være i ngs. vold ( nåde ) * berede sig på > * ( det ) værste * nordbo / viking * bede / bønfalde / * nåde trygle om > * berede sig på at - * tigge og bede om ( nåde ) af ng. * ... ng. om ( nåde ) * ... ng. om at - * udvise nåde overfor / have barmhjertighed med ng. * have barmhjertighed med ng. * bønfalde * spare ngs. liv * ...ng. * ... * spare ng. for ngt. * et liv i trældom
--	--

<b>232</b> The nuns <b>beg</b> the chief <b>to spare</b> them.	* tigge og bede ng. om at -	* spare ng.
<b>Entreating</b> him <b>to spare</b> them, they <b>implore</b> him <b>to spared</b> them <b>from</b> slavery / being <b>enslaved</b> .	* bede / bønfalde / * skåne ng. * bede etc. ng. om at - trygle ng. om at - * skåne ng. for ( at ) ngt.	
The nuns <b>beg</b> their <b>lives</b> .	* tigge og bede for sit liv	
They <b>beg</b> that they ( E& should ) be <b>spared</b> the <b>misfortune</b> <b>of mutilation / butchery / slaughter / massacre / being killed</b> .	* mis`få~t\$ên / tju~n * tigge og bede om at - * blive skånet for > * vanskæbne * ved { lemlæstelse / massenedslagting / = / = / at -	
' <b>Spare</b> us,' the nuns <b>beg</b> .	* spare ng.	* tigge og bede
' <b>Spare</b> our <b>lives</b> ,' the nuns <b>beg</b> the chief.	* spare ngs. liv	* ... ng.
The chief heard their words but they didn't <b>penetrate</b> .	* trænge ind	
<b>10</b> The chief was <b>in</b> ( <b>actual</b> ) <b>fact intent on</b> a <b>sacrifice</b> .	* faktisk * opsat på ngt. * helligt offerhandling ~ nemlig	
<b>Intent (up)on sacrificing</b> a nun, he looks around to choose a <b>sacrifice</b> .	* - - - at - * helligt offer	* ofre ng.
The <b>sacrificial victim</b> <b>faces</b> <b>certain death</b> .	* helligt offer * stå over for / ansigt til ansigt med * i det / samme øjeblik at -	* den visse død * kendsgerning
The <b>moment / instant</b> ( <b>that</b> ) the choice is a <b>certainty</b> , the chosen nun has to <b>face facts</b> and <b>look death in the face</b> .	* se kendsgerningerne i øjnene * kendsgerning	* ... døden ...
The death of the chosen nun seems a <b>certainty</b> .		
<b>Surely</b> God just can't <b>stand back</b> and let this happen but He doesn't seem to have <b>answered</b> the nun's <b>prayers</b> .	* vist da * reagere på ngs. bønner	* træde ( lidt ) tilbage forholde sig afventende
The Old Norse <b>myths</b> and legends <b>glorify</b> people	* myte	* glorificere / forherlige ng.
<b>20</b> who are <b>in thrall to</b> their <b>passions</b> .	* slave af >	* lidenskab
So the Norse are proud to be <b>in thrall of lust</b> and proud to be <b>thralls of</b> food, drink and drugs.	* slave / afhængig af > * - - - af ngt.	* begær, lyst, liderlighed
Many Northmen become <b>slave of adventurous</b> expeditons, and <b>slave to booty, loot, and plunder</b> .	* - = - * - = -	* spændingsmættet * plyndringsgods
Even if she has to <b>smile through</b> ( her ) <b>tears</b> , one of the nuns, a <b>buxom</b> young <b>novice</b> , <b>ravishingly</b> beautiful, <b>gets</b> an <b>idea</b> of <b>saving</b> their `skin and <b>avert</b> ( a total ) disaster.	* smile gennem tårer * frodig og veldrejet * få > * ide til at - * redde skindet ~ livet	* novice * henrivende * afværge / forhindre ngt. * helt bestemt
Even if she's a novice, and just <b>turned</b> 18, she <b>certainly</b> knows men's <b>weakness</b> for her <b>charms</b> .	* blive x * svaghed for	* ynder
<b>30</b> As she has never <b>felt unsure</b> about her <b>appearences</b> , and has never <b>felt insecure</b> about her <b>appearence</b> , she never <b>felt unsure of herself</b> .	* usikker omkring ngt. * usikker med hensyn til / utryk ved ngt. * ... sig selv	* udseende fremtoning * <<
Knowing the effect of <b>nakedness</b> and a <b>ravishing</b> smile, she <b>bare</b> her <b>shoulders</b> and <b>breasts</b> to the viking chief.	* nøgenhed * blotte	* henrivende * bryst
Not for a moment her <b>courage</b> <b>fails</b> / <b>deserts</b> her.	* øjeblik * modet >	* svigte ng.
<b>Smiling through tears</b> , the <b>ravishing</b> novice <b>exposes</b> her <b>naked shoulders</b> and <b>bare breasts</b> <b>before / in front of</b> the ( <b>very</b> ) <b>eyes</b> of the Viking chief.	* smile gennem tårer * nøgne skuldre * øjnene af ng.	* henrivende * fremvise / blotte ngt. * ( lige ) for >



233 The Vikings **turn** their **heads** in surprise.

They **turn** their **heads / faces** to see what is going on.

**Being all eyes**, they **turn to** see what happens.

All the Vikings **turn (a)round to** see the **nubile** novice.  
`nju~bail

**All eyes are on** the novice as they all **turn to** look at her  
**stripped to the waist / bare from the waist and upwards.**

Their eyes are **intent** as they all **look intently at /**  
in`tent  
take an **intent** look at the novice's **inviting** young body.

Unable to resist such **ravishing** beauty, the chief doesn't

**10 turn a deaf ear to** the nuns and their **crying for mercy.**

So the nuns' **begging for** mercy is not **turned down.**

The **gorgeous** novice temporarily **saves the situation**  
gå~dšës  
**so that** their **lives** are **spared in such way that** all the nuns  
are **spared.**

**In this way** and **in that way** the nuns **save** their **neck**,  
and **like this** or **like that** they at least **save** their **bacon.**

Having a **good opinion of** the beauty of some of the nuns,  
the Vikings **have a high opinion of** these nuns.

Now **ravished with** beauty, the vikings **turn randy.**

**20 Ravished by** their **savage** instinct, they **turn into savages.**

So when the novice **begs** ' Please, leave the rest alone,'  
the Viking chief **turns nasty** and **savagely snarles,** ' No.'

The Vikings then **ravish** the most attractive nuns **to**  
various **suitable** places where they **ravish** the nuns.  
`su~têbl / E& `sju~ -  
**Going / turning deathly pale / white** but otherwise not

**turning a hair**, the novice **awaits the inevitable.**  
ine`vitêbl

In the church the Viking chief **rapes** the novice right in front  
of the altar and a **sacred image** of Jesus on the cross.

The prioress **averts** her **eyes / gaze.**

**30 Standing silently `by**, and **turning** her **head away**,  
she **averts** her **eyes / gaze from** the **outrageous** sight.

**Turning white with fear** the prioress **averts** her **face.**

**Averting** her **face from** the **terrible** sight in front of her,  
she **turns a whiter shade of pale.**

Then she **whips (a)round** to avoid the **horrible** sight.

Having quickly **turned (a)round** and **turned away**,  
thus **turned her back on** the **outrage**, she prays to God.  
`autreidš

Only a **weak trembling** sound **issues from** her **lips.**

She is **terror-`stricken / -struck as if turned to stone.**

\* dreje hovedet

\* ... for at -

\* gøre store øjne

\* vende sig for at -

\* ... om ... \* ung og seksuelt tiltrækkende ( kvinde )

\* alles øjne hviler på ng.

\* vende sig for at -

\* med nøgen overkrop ( \* afklædt \* talje \* bar )  
nøgen

\* opmærksom

\* se ... på ngt.

målrettet, begærlig

\* =

\* tiltrækkende

\* betagende

\* vende det døve \* råben / \* nåde, barm-  
øre til ng. / ngt. græden om ngt. hjertighed

\* tiggen og beden om ngt.

\* afvise

\* henrivende  
pragtfuld

\* redde situationen

\* sådan / \* ngs. liv er sparet \* på en sådan måde at  
således at

\* ...

\* ...

\* ... \* ... \* redde skindet  
/ ... livet  
\* =

\* sådan  
således

\* have >

\* ~ fordelagtig

\* mening om ngt.

~ værdsætte ngt.

\* ... ng.

\* henrykt /  
henrevet over ngt.

\* blive >

\* tøjlesløs  
utugtig

\* rive ng. med

\* vild

\* blive til >

\* vild, -mand

\* tigge

\* blive \* modbydelig  
væmmelig

\* snerre

\* rasende

\* gribe og føre ng. bort

\* egnet  
passende

\* voldtage ng.

\* blive >

\* dødelig

\* bleg / hvid

( = ligbleg )

\* fortrække en mine

\* vente på ngt.

\* det uundgåelige

\* voldtage ng.

\* hellig

\* afbildning

\* vende øjnene bort

\* stå \* tavs \* ~ i nærheden  
~ forholde sig passivt

\* vende hovedet bort

\* vende blikket væk fra ngt.

\* oprørende, uhyrlig

\* blive hvid af skræk

\* vende ansigtet bort

\* - - - fra >

\* forfærdelig / frygtelig / skrækkelig  
rædselsvækkende / skrækkindjagende ( syn )

\* ~ blive >

\* hvidere

\* nuance

\* bleg

\* vende sig omkring / - - - hurtigt - - -

\* =

\* vende sig om

\* - - - bort

\* vende ryggen til ngt.

\* skændselsgerning

\* svag \* skælvende ( lyd )

\* ~ komme ud af > \* læber

\* rædselsslagen

\* som forstenet

**234** ' Spare my life, **I beg of you,**' the novice **pleads.**

Suddenly, when the **lustful** Viking chief has  
**completed** his **project**, he **turns** the novice **loose**,  
**turns away** and orders his men to **withdraw.**

So having **violated** the nuns, the **rapists turn back**  
the **`victimized** nuns.

They **turn** the **rape victims back to** the church.

**It's a mercy** ( that ) no nuns are killed or **carried off.**

During the plunder only the church is **spared.**

**10** Only the church is **spared from arson** / being **set on fire.**

When the nuns **turn back to** the church, they realize  
that the rest of the convent is **on fire.**

Apparently God has **been deaf to** the nuns' **prayer for** help.

Has God **turned a blind eye** ( to the outrage )  
and **turned a deaf ear to** the nuns and their prayers,  
and will the nuns **turn** their **back on** God ?

The prioress was **spared from** rape / being raped.

' Fortunately I was **spared** the **ordeal of** rape –  
thankfully I was **spared** the **horrific ordeal of** being raped,'  
hå / hê`rifik

**20** she thinks, while a **roaring fire** is **raging** in the convent.

Having **wreaked havoc, mayhem** and **destruction**,  
the raid **causes** / **creates havoc for** the nuns.

Having **wrought havoc, mayhem** and **destruction on**  
the nuns' daily life, their plans, and economy, the disaster  
**plays havoc with** their **routines**, their plans and economy.

The prioress returns to her duties **with a vengeance** even if  
**it's right to guess** ( that ) she has an **explanation problem.**

Imagining that **God** must have been **gracious to** her,  
she believes she was saved by a **gracious act of God.**

**30** ' **There but for the grace of God** ( go I ),' she thinks.

So she considers herself **in charge on behalf of** the Lord,  
and not the **victim of circumstance.**

The prioress **finds that circumstances force** her to  
**find a scapegoat / whipping boy for** their **ill fate(s).**

One can only **guess at** her **reasons for** doing so,  
and **guess who** she might **make a scapegoat / whipping boy.**

**Guessing at** a name, the nuns might **guess** the name.

They **discover** ( that ) the prioress has made up her mind  
when they soon **discover who** she had in mind.

\* bede / bønfalde / trygle ng. \* bede etc.

\* lysten liderlig

\* fuldføre > \* projekt \* slippe ng. løs

\* vende sig bort \* trække sig tilbage

\* voldtage ng. \* voldtægtsmand \* sende tilbage

\* offergjort

\* sende ng. tilbage til ngt. \* voldtægtsoffer

\* ~ det er en guds lykke at - \* bortføre ng. ( åbenlyst )

\* forskåne ngt.

\* ... for ngt. \* ildspåsættelse \* sætte ngt. i brand

\* vende tilbage til ngt.

\* i brand \* buldre

\* være døv overfor > \* bøn om ngt.

\* vende det blinde øje til ( ngt.)

\* vende det døde øre til ng. / ngt.

\* vende ng. ryggen

\* skånet for ( at ) ngt.

\* skånet for prøvelsen ved ngt.

\* ... \* forfærdelig \* prøvelse ved at -

\* brølende, buldrende \* rase

\* anrette / forvolde > \* skade ødelæggelse

\* skabe ravage for ng.

\* ... i ngt.

\*

\* & vende op og ned på ngt. \* rutiner

\* med ekstra / fornyet styrke

\* det er rigtigt / \* gætte / \* forklarings- \* problem  
korrekt at - ~ forestille sig at -

\* Gud > \* ( være ) nådig mod ng.  
& ... ng. nådig

\* nådig \* handling ( fra > ) \* =

\* ~ ( jeg ) slap med skrækken med Guds hjælp

\* i ledelsesrollen \* på vegne af ng.

~ som den, der har ledelsen

\* offer for omstændighederne

\* finde ( ud af ) at - \* = \* tvinger ng. til at -

\* finde > \* syndebuk / \* vanskæbne  
prygelnarbe for >

\* gætte på > \* grunde til at -

\* ... ( på ) hvem - \* gøre til > \* <<

\* gætte på ( navn ) \* gætte ( navn )

\* opdage at -

\* ... hvxx -



**236** Their laughter **turns from hilarity into horror**, though,  
as a young Viking, **wounded in battle, drops dead**.

The souls of **brave** Vikings who have been **slain** in battle  
are brought by **Valkyries** to **Valhalla** or **Valhall**,  
val'ki(è)ríz val'halê / `val -  
the hall of Odin in **Asgard**.

Together with others who have died **bravely**,  
they spend their days in battle and their nights in **feasting**.

The **health** of the Valhalla dwellers is never **ravaged by**  
eating and drinking **bouts** as their looks and mental health

**10** **eternally** survive the **ravages of** drink and **gluttony**.  
glútêni

**Every so often**, the members of an expedition never

**return to** their **native soil** to be **reunited with** their families.  
ri~ju~`naitid

Some expeditions **disintegrate** as they **come up against**  
dis`intêgreit  
**more than they can match**.

Getting engaged in **heavy fighting**, the Vikings sometimes  
**come off second`best** despite their skills and **bravery**.

**At the mercy of** the weather, some expeditions **have**  
the **misfortune** to **run into** / **of running into** a **fierce / heavy /**  
mis`fâ~t\$ên  
**violent storm**, and **be shipwrecked**.

**20** Some Vikings **turn** their **minds to** settling **abroad**,  
and eventually **carry** ( ) **out** the idea.

It is months before the Vikings **return to** Denmark.

Having been on an **indefinite** expedition since spring,  
in`definit  
the ships **return from** England after weeks **at sea / on the sea**.

The Vikings **have** the **good fortune** to **return from**  
the expedition **to find everything** ( much ) **as usual**.

Their families have waited a long time for them to **return**.

They have **long** waited for them to **return home from**  
their Viking expedition.

**30** While a married Viking is **away from home**,  
his wife is **temporary head** of the **house / household**.

Back **on solid ground**, the Vikings **return** their weapons **to**  
their old places, and **leave things as they were**.

The Vikings **apportion** some of the loot **to** their family  
è`på\$ên  
and **apportion** some of it **among** the community  
but **apart from** this **everything goes on as before**.

Having **planned** ( a settlement abroad ) **for** the future,  
many Vikings **went abroad** to settle and **live abroad**  
in **self-contained** communities.

\* forvandles fra > \* opstemt munterhed \* til > \* skræk  
rædsel  
\* såret \* i kamp \* falde død om  
pludselig dø  
\* modig \* slå ng. ihjel  
tapper dræbe ng.  
\* valkyrie

\* Asgård

\* modigt

\* spise og feste

\* helbred

\* hæрге / ødelægge <

\* forløb, periode ( ~ æde og drikkelag / -gilde )

\* for evigt

\* hærgen

\* grovæderi

i evighed

ødelæggelse

\* somme tider

\* vende tilbage til > \* hjemstavn \* genforenes med ng.

\* falde fra hinanden

\* komme op imod >

gå i opløsning

\* mere end ng. kan klare ( møde sin overmand )

\* hård (-e) kamp (-e) / -handler

\* & møde sin overmand

\* mod

\* i ( vejrets ) vold

\* have > / lide >

\* det uheld /

\* løbe ind i >

\* rasende

\* =

den vanskæbne at -

hård, voldsom

\* = \* uvejr

\* forlise, lide skibbrud

\* ~ overveje ngt.

\* udenlands

\* udføre / gøre alvor af ngt.

\* vende tilbage

\* ikke nærmere fastlagt

\* vende tilbage fra ngt.

\* til søs / på havet

\* have det held at -

\* vende tilbage fra ngt.

\* alt ved det gamle

\* vende hjem

\* længe

\* ... fra ngt.

\*

\* væk hjemmefra

\* midlertidig

\* husets overhoved

\* på fast grund

\* lægge / sætte /  
stille ngt. tilbage til ngt.

\* lade alt være ved det gamle

\* uddele ngt. til ng.

\* fordele ngt. mellem ng.

\* bortset fra ngt.

\* alt er ved det gamle

\* planlægge ( ngt. ) for ngt.

\* tage til >

\* udlandet  
et fremmed land

\* leve i ...

\* selvstændigt fungerende ( samfund )

# THE NOVICE

<b>237</b> After the convent was <b>raged / sacked / plundered</b> by the Vikings, and had partly <b>fallen victim to</b> an <b>arson</b> attack, it was <b>plundered, looted</b> , and <b>pillaged</b> of <b>leftover</b> valuables.	* plyndre ngt. * blive offer for ngt. * plyndre / = / = ngt. for ngt.	* brandstiftelse ildspåsættelse * tiloversblevne
<b>Pillaging</b> at night, local <b>plunderers, looters</b> , and <b>pillagers</b> ran away with <b>the spoils: booty, plunder, loot</b> , and <b>pillage</b> .	* plyndre * plyndringsgods ran, rov * forårsage / skabe >	* plyndrende person * = * = * =
The disaster <b>brings about major changes</b> in the nuns' lives.	* skæbne livsforløb * ødelæggelser fra ngt.	* tage en drejning til det værre * = * =
From then on their <b>fortunes</b> (pl.) <b>take a downward turn</b> .	* skæbne livsforløb * ødelæggelser fra ngt.	* tage en drejning til det værre * = * =
The <b>ravages</b> of the <b>devastating</b> fire, and the <b>sack, plunder, looting</b> and <b>pillage</b> of the convent <b>put the clock back</b> .	* = * = * =	* altødelæggende * plyndring ( i krig ) * sætte udviklingen tilbage
<b>10</b> It <b>turns</b> the <b>clock back</b> many years.	* = * =	* = * =
Even if they wanted to <b>put the clock back</b> , the nuns can't <b>turn /A set</b> the <b>clock back</b> .	* skrue tiden tilbage * =	
The nuns have to <b>turn</b> their <b>hand to</b> hard work.	* tage fat på / gå i gang med / give sig i kast / lag med ngt.	
Being a <b>hard / stern / tough taskmaster</b> , the prioress acts like a <b>slave driver</b> .	* hård / streng arbejdsgiver ( læremester ) * slavepisker	
Every nun <b>turns</b> her <b>hand to rebuilding</b> the convent which <b>dates from / back to</b> about <b>the turn of the century</b> .	* << at - * datere sig fra / tilbage til > * uskyldigt offer for ngt.	* genopbygge ngt. * århundredeskiftet
Although the nuns are <b>innocent victims of</b> a Viking raid, the prioress now <b>blames sinful</b> thoughts <b>for</b> the disaster.	* bebrejde ngt. / give ngt. skylden for ngt.	* syndig * syndighed
<b>20</b> It's been a disaster and she's <b>blaming it on</b> <b>sinfulness</b> .	* = * skyldes	
As the rapes and ravage are <b>blamed on</b> sinful thoughts, the nuns are told to <b>turn the other cheek</b> .	* vende den anden kind til	
<b>It's a</b> (great) <b>pity</b> (that) some <b>leading</b> Christians <b>preach on</b> sin and condemnation rather than <b>Christian charity</b> .	* ... synd / en skam at * næstekærlighed	* ledende toneangivende * prædike om
<b>Pity</b> they <b>corrupt</b> the teaching of Jesus - what a pity.	* synd / en skam at -	
What a <b>pity to abuse</b> the Gospel like that.	* ... at gøre ngt.	* forvanske
' Sinful thoughts of the nuns <b>are partly to blame</b> or rather <b>largely to blame</b> , ' the <b>pitiless</b> prioress <b>persists</b> .	* have skylden * i det store og hele ...	* fremture * ubarmhjertig
' <b>I beg to differ</b> , ' the novice <b>objects insecurely</b> ,	* tillade sig at være uenig * om jeg må bede	* indvende * usikker / utryg protestere ved situationen * =
<b>30</b> ' What, <b>pray</b> , is the meaning of this and who, <b>pray tell</b> , are you to judge on behalf of God ? ' the novice goes on as she <b>abnegates</b> all responsibility and guilt.	* frasige sig ( ansvar, skyld ) * uberørt af ngt.	
<b>Unmoved</b> (pred.) <b>by</b> their personal tragedies, the prioress neither <b>pities</b> the ravished nuns nor <b>pities</b> their sufferings.	* have medfølelse med ng. / ngt. * medfølelse / medlidenhed for ng. / ngt.	
Feeling no <b>pity for</b> them and <b>for</b> the suffering(s) they have <b>endured</b> , she <b>takes / has</b> no <b>pity on</b> the nuns.	* tåle / udholde / døje / gennemgå ngt.	* få / have ... med ng.
Upset by the novice's <b>abnegation of</b> responsibility and guilt, the prioress will hardly <b>come to terms with</b> the novice.	* frasigelse af ( ansvar, skyld ) * komme overens / på god fod med ng.	

## 238 The novice's **suspicions return.**

The **return** of her **doubts** makes her wonder why **certain** of the nuns were **spared**, and others were not.

The novice's last faith in the prioress is **shattered** by her attempt to **justify that** certain of the nuns were **spared from** rape / being raped while others were not **spared the ordeal of** rape / being raped although they <sup>å` di~(ê)l</sup> were all **leading a blameless** ( innocent ) life.

Most of the nuns, though, **blame themselves.**

**10 Turning to self-blame, blaming** themselves for their **misfortune(s)**, these nuns **take refuge in** praying.

**Praying to be forgiven / pardoned** by the Lord, the nuns **pray for / beg** ( **for** ) ( his ) **forgiveness / pardon.**

Unlike martyrs they chose to be **cowards**, and chose not to suffer or **die for** their **sacred faith.**

The novice doesn't **come to terms with** her **fate.**

Feeling she's been **`scapegoated / made a scapegoat for** the disaster, the novice claims that she is being **victimized** by the prioress because of her **conflict with** her.

**20 Subjected to victimization and momentarily** feeling deceived by God, the novice **has a turn** (o-f E).

**Doubting God at times**, she **takes a turn for the worse.**

**By turns**, she is **outspoken** and aggressive, then **silent / mute** and **affectionate towards** God,

In her **fever dreams** she has an **inescapable** feeling <sup>inis`keipêbl</sup> of having been totally **left in the lurch.**

In **turn** the novice **turns to rebellion, blaming** God.

**Inescapably** feeling **left high and dry**, the novice **blames** the Lord **for** having **deserted** and **forsaken** the nuns.

**30 Not uttering a word** for days, she **feels a great / strong / overwhelming sense of desertedness.**

The **forsaken** novice becomes more and more **outspoken** <sup>(` ) aut`spêukên</sup> in her **criticism** as she blames God for his **desertion.**

Blaming God **begs** the **question that** a caring god exists.

The course of events **begs the `question as to whether** God cares about his devoted worshippers, and as her feeling of **forsakenness begs the question of** the existence of a caring god, the **deserted** novice is beginning to **doubt it.**

Feeling **unsure**, she is **doubtful about** lot of things.

* mistanker	* vende tilbage
* tilbagevenden af >	* tvivl
* nogle bestemte af ng. visse	* spare ng.
* ødelægge ngt.	
* retfærdiggøre at -	
* spare for ( at ) ngt.	
* prøvelsen ved ( at ) ngt.	
* leve et uskyldigt liv	
* bebrejde sig selv	
* ... for ngt.	* vanskæbne ( ulykker )
* søge tilflugt i at -	
* ty til >	* selv-bebrejdelse
* bede om >	* bede til at - * blive tilgivet
* kujon	* tilgivelse * ( tigge og ) bede / * tilgivelse bønfalde / trygle om >
* dø for sin tro	
* forlige sig med / acceptere >	* skæbne
* gøre ng. til syndebuk for ngt.	
* forfølge, behandle uretfærdigt	
* lade det gå ud over, gøre ng. til syndebuk	
* konflikt / uoverensstemmelse med ng.	
* forfølgelse	* kortvarigt
* uretfærdig behandling	( i ) et øjeblik
* føle sig sløj	
* tvivle på ng.	* indimellem
* på skift / skiftevis	* pludselig få det værre
* stille	* åbenmundet / -hjertig
* =	frimodig, dristig
* i >	* kærlig / hengiven overfor ng.
* feber	
* drøm	
* uafrystelig	
* lade i stikken ( * slingren, dinglen, krængning )	
* følgelig	* ty til >
* oprør	* bebrejde ng.
* uafrysteligt	* lade i stikken
* bebrejde ng. for ngt.	* forlade
* svigte	* =
* ikke sige et ord	* mærke en voldsom / stærk /
* ~ ... noget som helst	
* overvældende følelse af >	forladthed
* svigtet	svigt
* åbenmundet / -hjertig / frimodig /	
* dristig / ligefrem >	
* i / med >	* kritik
* frafald, svigt	
* unddragelse af samlivet	
* rejse spørgsmålet om / ~ forudsætte at -	
* indbyde til at spørge /	
* rejse spørgsmålet om ngt.	
* svigt	* rejse spørgsmålet om -
* forladt, svigtet	* tvivle på >
* usikker	* det
	* tvivlende om ngt.

**239** The novice realizes that she has allowed herself to be **lulled into** a false **sense of security**.

She has realized that there are **fewer certainties** in life than maintained by the Catholic **dogmas**.

The novice, however, soon **takes a turn for the better**.

The events have changed her **turn of mind**, though, and, **in turn**, she has **lost the faith of her childhood** forever.

**Doing a `turnabout / <around in her attitude of mind**, she does an **extraordinarily rapid turnaround (E)** in her **attitudes**.  
E : iks`strá~dénérili

**10** She does an **about-face on faith**.

She does a **complete about-turn (eE)** on faith on God, a complete **about-turn over** self-blame, and a complete **about-turn in** her outlook on life.

So she **does a volt-face in her turn of mind**.  
vált`fas

**Doing a `U-turn in her way of thinking**, she **makes a U-turn in her attitudes to(wards)** God and faith in God.

The **senseless** acts of violence and cruelty **turn the novice away from** faith.

Nothing could **restore** her **faith** in God.

**20** **Every time** the novice **turns around**, the prioress **takes her to task**.

She **takes her to task for faithlessness**, and **takes her to task over disobedience and insubordination**.

'Don't **turn your anger on** God,' the prioress **blusters**, 'and don't **speak out of `turn**,' she **adds**, blaming the novice for **talking out of turn**.

The novice realizes that the sight of the prioress, and other nuns praying and **blaming themselves churns / turns her stomach**.

**30** She **outspokenly criticizes** their **victim mentality**.

Her **stomach churns / turns** as she hears them **blame / blaming themselves for their misfortunes**.

**Asserting her innocence and turning against** blind faith, the novice becomes an **outspoken opponent** of self-blame.

**Turning her nose up at blind `orthodoxy**, she comes up with **critical comments** and **outspoken** views.

As the novice starts to **asserts herself**, the other nuns are **dumbfounded / dumbstruck** by her **outspokenness**.  
dûm`faundid

\*  
\* lulle ng. ind i \* følelse af > \* tryghed  
\* færre \* vished  
\* dogme, grundsætning  
\* pludselig få det bedre  
\* tænke måde, tankegang  
følelsesliv  
\* som følge heraf \* miste > \* ~ sin barnetro  
\* lave / foretage en kovending \* ~ bevidst holdning  
med hensyn til ngt. tankegang  
\* ekstraordinær \* = \* & attitude  
( måden at stille sig an på )  
\* =  
\* komplet \* =  
fuldstændig  
\* =  
\* ... i ngt.  
\* = \* tankegang  
\* =  
\* = \* holdning til ng. / ngt.  
\* meningsløs  
\* vende ng. bort fra ngt.  
\* genoprette > \* tro på / tillid til ng.  
\* hver gang ng. dukker op  
ved enhver given lejlighed  
\* tage ng. i skole  
\* & kritisere for \* troløshed \* >  
svigefuldhed  
\* ... for \* ulydighed \* ulydighed  
\* vende ngt. mod n. \* bralre / råbe op  
true  
\* tale uden for tur / i utide  
/ over sig  
\* =  
\*  
\* bebrejde sig selv  
give ... skylden  
\* vende og dreje > \* mave  
~ få det til at vende sig i en / give ng. kvalme  
\* åbenmundet / -hjertigt \* offer- \* mentalitet  
frimodigt / -tænke måde  
\* << ( \* vende og dreje )  
\* bebrejde / give sig selv skylden for ngt. \* uheld  
vanskæbne  
\* hævde > \* uskyld \* vende sig imod ngt.  
\* åbenmundet / \* modstander af ngt.  
-hjertigt, frimodigt  
\* rynke på næsen af ngt. \* rettroenhed  
\* kritisk \* kommentar \* << ( synspunkter )  
\* hævde sig  
\* lamslået åbenmundet- / -hjertigt- /  
frimodighed

<b>240</b> The prioress' self-blame <b>turns</b> the novice <b>away from</b> her.	* få ng. til at vende sig bort fra ng.	
The novice <b>turns away from</b> the prioress and orthodoxy.	* vende sig bort fra ng. / ng.	
The events <b>turn</b> the novice <b>into</b> a disbeliever.	* gøre ng. til ng.	
<b>Turning away from</b> faith, and <b>turning into</b> a disbeliever,	* vende sig bort fra ( tro )	* blive forandret til ng.
the novice <b>turns away from</b> the idea of <b>becoming</b> a nun.	* ... ( ide )	* blive ng.
Having an argument on faith with the novice,	*	
the prior calls the novice a <b>turncoat</b> and <b>reproaches</b> her,	* vendekåbe	* bebrejde ng.
' How can you <b>turn (a)round and deny</b> God? '	* & sådan lige pludselig	* benægte / fornægte ng.
' How can you make such a <b>turn(a)round</b> ? ' she <b>reproaches</b> .	* kovending	* bebrejde
<b>10</b> The prioress tries to <b>turn the tables on</b> the novice	* få overtaget over ng.	
by trying to <b>turn</b> all the nuns <b>against</b> the novice.	* vende ng. mod ng.	
Nevertheless, the novice seems very <b>sure of herself</b> .	* selvsikker	
She has an <b>air of easy (self-) assurance</b> .	* aura / udstråling af ng.	* afslappet * selvsikkerhed
She seems <b>assured</b> ; she seems <b>self-assured</b> .	* ( selv-) sikker	* selvsikker
<b>Assuredly</b> the <b>tables are turned</b> when the novice	* helt sikkert	* rollerne er byttet om
<b>turns a phrase</b> in her doubt about God and about the reason	* formulere en skarp bemærkning	
in prayer and self-blame.	*	
The novice <b>ventures that turnabout is fair`play</b> (A).	* antyde at -	* venden omkring * ærlig, redelig * spil ~ at give igen af samme mønt er i orden
' Don't listen to the novice,' the prioress warns.	*	
<b>20</b> ' It's all <b>bluster</b> ,' she says <b>with assurance / confidence</b> .	* tom råben op	* ... forvisning / overbevisning
Although many of the nuns <b>turn against</b> the novice,	* vende sig mod ng.	
some of the nuns seem to <b>share in</b> the novice's <b>doubt(s)</b> .	* tage del i >	* tvivl
The <b>blustering</b> prioress <b>turns against</b> the novice.	* højroret brovtende	* vende sig imod ng.
Accusing the novice of <b>turning`tail</b> , she asks,	* stikke halen mellem benene	
' Who <b>is to blame</b> ; who's <b>to blame for</b> the disaster ? '	* have skylden	* ... for ng.
The prioress tries to <b>shift the blame</b> ; she is trying to	* skyde skylden fra sig	
<b>shift the blame onto</b> the novice.	* ... over på	
If anyone <b>is to blame</b> it's the novice; if anything	* bebrejdes få / have skylden	
<b>is to blame for</b> the disaster it's the novice's sinful past.	* ... for	
<b>30</b> The convent was ravaged and the prioress <b>turns around</b>	* lige pludselig ( gøre ng.)	
<b>and blames it on</b> the novice: she <b>blames it on</b> her past.	* give ng. skylden for det	* give ng. ...
She <b>blames</b> the novice: she <b>blames her for</b> the disaster.	* give ng. skylden	* ... for ng.
The prioress <b>blames</b> the disaster <b>on</b> the novice;	* lægge skylden for ng. på ng.	
she <b>blames</b> the ravage <b>on</b> the novice's sinful past.	* ... på ng.	
The prioress <b>puts / lays / pins / places</b> all the <b>blame</b>	* lægge ... skylden	
( <b>for</b> the misfortunes ) <b>on</b> the novice and her sinful past.	* ( for ng. )	* på ng. / ng.
' The novice and her sinful past are <b>entirely to blame</b> .'	* helt og aldeles	* bebrejde ng&t. give ng&t. skylden
the prioress <b>alleges</b> .	* hævde påstå	
Most of the nuns don't dare ( to ) <b>venture an opinion</b> .	* driste sig til / vove at fremsætte >	* en mening



**241** ‘ Such **sinner** is **surely to** be punished,  
and where else could **the blame lie for** their fate? ‘  
the prioress **blusters**.

‘ **Don’t blame** me – it’s not my fault,’ the novice **retorts**.

‘ You can **hardly blame** her **for** the disaster,’ a few nuns  
**declare concurrently**.’

‘ You can’t just **turn round and** say that she’s **to blame**,’  
some of the nuns **contradict** ( the prioress ).

kântrê`dikt  
‘ Why is the novice **liable to get the blame** ? –

**10** why are some people liable to **get the blame for** things  
that go wrong while others **get the credit for** things  
that go right ? ‘ one of the nuns **ventures to** ask.

When her (self-) **assurance** and **confidence** seem to  
**desert** her, the novice **takes decisive steps to**  
**assure herself of** her **blamelessness**.

The prioress can’t expect the novice to **accept the blame**;  
she can’t expect her to **accept the blame for** the disaster.

The prioress can’t expect the novice to **take the blame**;  
she just can’t expect her to **take all the blame for** the disaster.

**20** Unwilling to **accept** any **blame**, the novice denies  
to **blame / punish herself ( for anything )**.

Moreover the prioress has never been able to  
**define** precisely **what** she means by sinfulness.

‘ It’s **none of** her **business to apportion blame ( to them )**  
or **apportion blame among** them, ‘ a nun **ventures**.

Due to the speed and **decision / decisiveness** of their raids,  
the Vikings **gain decisive victories over** the English.

Due to unpreparedness and **indecision / indecisiveness**,  
indi`siʃn  
the English **suffer decisive defeats against** the Vikings.

**30** As it turns out, the **blame lies with** the **ruling class**.

Having both failed to **act decisively**,  
di`saivli  
the king and the nobility must **share the blame for**  
the lack of **decisive defence** against Viking invasion.

They need to **take decisive action against** invasion.

**Having / holding** the **whip hand over** the convent / nuns,  
the prioress feels a need to **wreak her rage** and **ill will**.

**Enslaved by** religious delusions, the prioress **wreaks**  
her **fury on** the novice as she claims that their problems  
**are down to** the novice and her **impiety**.  
im`paiëti

\* synder \* sikker på at -  
\* skylden ligge for ngt.  
\* braldre / råbe op  
\* svare vredt / fornærmet / humoristisk  
give ... igen  
\* næppe \* give ng. skylden for ngt.  
\* erklære \* samstemmende  
\* lige pludselig ( gøre ngt.) \* det er ngs. skyld  
\* modsige ( ng. )  
\* være tilbøjelig til / udsat for at - \* få skylden  
\* få skylden for ngt.  
\* få anerkendelse for ngt.  
\* driste sig til / vove at -  
\* selvtillid \* =  
\* svigte ng. \* tage > \* afgørende \* skridt  
beslutsom  
\* overbevise sig om at \* være uden skyld  
\* erkende sin skylden  
\* ... for  
\* påtage sig skylden  
\* ... hele ... for ngt.  
\* påtage sig > \* skyld  
\* bebrejde / ~ bebrejde sig selv ( for ngt.)  
\*  
\* definere hvxx  
\* fordele skyld ( tildele ng. skyld )  
\* fordele skyld mellem ng. \* driste sig til / vove at sige  
\* beslutsomhed  
\* opnå > \* afgørende \* sejr over ng.  
\* ubeslutsomhed  
\* lide > \* = \* nederlag til ng.  
\* som det skal vise sig \* herskende klasse  
\* handle \* beslutsomt  
\* dele skylden for ngt.  
\* beslutsom \* forsvar  
klar og tydelig  
\* skride til > \* afgørende \* handling mod ngt.  
beslutsom  
\* ~ have magten over ng&t.  
\* udøse > \* raseri \* uvilje, mishag  
\* gjort til / være slave af ngt. \* udøse >  
\* sin vrede over ng.  
\* ~ kan henføres til / skyldes ng&t. \* ugudelighed

<b>242 Rebuking</b> the novice <b>for</b> her <b>impieties</b> , the prioress	* ... for ngt.	* ugudelige gerninger	* =>
<b>reprimands</b> her <b>for</b> her <b>impious acts</b> and <b>impious speech</b> . <small>`impaiês / im`paiês</small>	* for ngt.	* ugudelig * handling	* ... tale
Having <b>wreaked / wrought</b> her <b>anger on</b> the novice,	* udløse sin vrede mod ng.		
the prioress <b>rebukes / reprimands</b> her <b>for abandoning</b> faith.	* irrettesætte ng. for ngt.	* forlade / opgive ngt.	
' You have acted <b>impiously</b> ,' the prioress <b>reprimands</b> .	* ugudeligt	* irrettesætte	
Even if she is <b>receiving</b> a severe <b>reprimand / rebuke for</b>	* modtage	* reprimande / irrettesættelse for	
<b>impiousness</b> , the novice just <b>glares</b> at the prioress, before	* ugudelighed	* se vredt / stirre olmt på	
she <b>turns / spins on</b> her <b>heel</b> , <b>turns</b> her <b>back on</b> the prioress	* vende om på hælen	* vende ng. ryggen	
and <b>stamples / stomps out</b> of the church.	* trampe / stampe / marchere ud af ngt.		
<b>10</b> Having <b>turned</b> her <b>back on</b> the Catholic faith, the novice	* vende ngt. ryggen		
faces a <b>big, major, difficult, hard</b> and <b>tough decision</b> .	* stor, større, vanskelig, svær	* beslutning	
It's a big <b>decision for</b> her; it's a <b>decision of crucial</b>	* beslutning for ng.	* =	* altafgørende
<b>importance</b> , so she has to <b>make</b> the <b>right decision</b> .	* vigtighed	* træffe >	* den rigtige * beslutning
Having to <b>make</b> such an <b>important decision</b> ,	* ... vigtig ...		
it would be stupid to <b>make</b> a <b>snap decision</b> ,	* ... forhastet / overilet ...		
and perhaps <b>take</b> a <b>wrong decision</b> .	* ... forkert ...		
Although God has always <b>played</b> a <b>decisive role</b> in her life,	* spille en afgørende rolle		
he seems to be of no help in <b>reaching</b> a <b>decision</b> .	* nå til >		* beslutning
<b>There's no getting round it / it cannot be helped</b> .	* der er ingen vej udenom her hjælper ingen kære mor		
<b>20</b> As there's no one to help with <b>decisions about what</b> to do,	* beslutning om ngt.		
she has to <b>make</b> her own <b>firm decision about / on</b> the matter.	* træffe ( sin egen ) faste beslutning om ngt.		
<b>It has got to be done / There it is !</b>	* <<<		
She has to <b>make</b> a <b>decision as to whether</b> to leave or stay.	* træffe en beslutning om hvadenten -		
<b>Giving</b> full <b>consideration to</b> her decision, she eventually	* ~ gøre sig ( alle mulige ) overvejelser om ngt.		
<b>arrives at / comes to</b> a <b>definite</b> and <b>definitive conclusion</b> , <small>`definêt di`finêtive</small>	* nå til > * bestemt, klar	* afgørende * konklusion	
So having <b>reached / arrived at / come to</b> a <b>final decision</b> ,	* nå / komme til > * endelig >	* afgørelse / beslutning	
the novice, in turn, <b>takes</b> a <b>definite</b> and <b>definitive decision</b> .	* tage ... beslutning		
As she <b>can't abide</b> the prioress, and <b>can't abide</b> the idea	* ikke holde ng. / ngt. ud		
of being <b>cooped up in</b> the convent any longer, she <b>decides to</b>	* ... udholde ...		
<b>30 desert</b> the convent, and her <b>decision</b> is <b>final</b> .	* være spærret inde i ngt.	* beslutte / bestemme sig til at -	
Having <b>taken</b> the <b>final decision to quit</b> all <b>doubt</b> ,	* forlade ngt.	* beslutning	* endelig
nothing can <b>change</b> her <b>decision to quit convent life</b> .	* tage den endlige beslutning om at-	* opgive ... tvivl	
Having <b>definitely</b> and <b>definitively decided (that)</b> she no	* lave om på ngs. beslutning om at -	* kloster- / nonnelivet	
longer wants to be a nun, she <b>(as) sure as hell</b> wants to <b>quit</b> .	* bestemt	* helt afgjort	* beslutte ( sig til ) at -
Her mother would <b>turn</b> E/A <b>roll in</b> her <b>grave</b> , if she knew	* stensikkert	*	
that her daughter would quit <b>with</b> her <b>tail between</b> her <b>legs</b> .	* vende sig i sin grav		
<b>Battling with / against</b> the prioress has been a <b>voyage of</b>	* med halen mellem benene		
<b>self-discovery</b> , and <b>abiding by</b> her <b>decision</b> , the novice	* kæmpe med / mod ng.	* rejse i / ~ oplevelse af >	
<b>turns over a new leaf</b> , and <b>there's no turning back</b> .	* selvopdagelse	* forblive / holde fast i >	* beslutning / -erkendelse
	* vende et nyt blad	* der er ingen vej tilbage	
	~ begynde et nyt liv		

<b>243 Knowing for sure</b> (that) she has <b>reached</b> the <b>point of no return</b> , the novice <b>knows for certain</b> she's going to desert.	* vide helt sikkert	* nå til det punkt, hvor der >
<b>Saying for sure</b> (that) she has <b>passed</b> the <b>point of no return</b> , she <b>says for certain</b> she's going to leave the convent.	* sige helt sikker ( at - ) * er nogen vej tilbage	* passeret det punkt, hvor der ikke > * ... med sikkerhed ( at- )
The prioress and many of the nuns refuse to <b>acknowledge</b> the <b>reasons behind</b> her <b>decision</b> .	* erkende / godtage ngt. * ( fornufts- ) grund	* bag ngs. beslutning
When the nuns beg her to stay, her answer is a <b>decisive</b> no.	* bestemt	
Neither the other nuns nor the prioress are able to <b>change</b> her <b>decision to quit convent life</b> .	* * ændre sin beslutning om at -	* nonnelivet
<b>10</b> Eventually the prioress <b>abandon</b> her <b>attempts to</b> make the novice <b>abandoned</b> her <b>idea of desertion</b> / deserting.	* opgive ens forsøg på * opgive ens ide om ngt. / at ngt.	* desertering frafald
Having <b>admonished</b> the novice <b>for</b> leaving the convent, the prioress <b>admonishes</b> her not <b>to blame</b> anyone but herself if she if she <b>goes to the dogs</b> ,	* bebrejde ngt. for at - * formane / tilråde ngt. ( ikke ) at - * gå i hundene	* bebrejde / skyde skylden på ng.
' Jesus, the <b>Saviour</b> came to <b>save</b> sinners,' she adds.	* frelseren	* frelse ng.
' If they fail in <b>fending for themselves</b> , they'll <b>only have</b> themselves <b>to blame</b> ,' the prioress <b>assures</b> the other nuns.	* klare sig selv * sig selv at bebrejde	* kun have * forsikre
Having <b>decided definitely</b> and <b>definitively</b> , the Novice is <b>sure</b> ( that ) she wants to leave the convent.	* helt bestemt * sikker på at	* helt afgjort uigenkaldeligt
<b>20</b> She's <b>certain (that)</b> she wants to <b>abandon</b> the convent.	* ( ganske- ) =	* forlade ngt.
She <b>certainly</b> is determined; she's <b>surely</b> going to leave.	* helt bestemt	* bestemt
' <b>Are you sure</b> – <b>are you certain</b> ?' the other nuns ask her.	* være sikker	* ... helt ...
' I'm <b>absolutely sure</b> and <b>absolutely certain</b> ,' she answers.	* helt sikker	* =
She <b>sounds</b> very <b>sure</b> ; she <b>sounds certain</b> .	* lyde * ( meget / ret ) sikker	* ... helt sikker
The Novice is <b>definite about</b> her decision.	* fast besluttet på ngt.	
She's <b>definite about</b> leaving he convent.	* ... at -	* helt bestemt
That's <b>definite</b> then, is it ? That's a <b>definite</b> then, is it ?	* helt afgjort / bestemt	* en helt afgjort sag
<b>It's</b> (a) <b>definite that</b> the Novice is leaving.	* det er ( en ) afgjort ( sag ) at -	
A nun asks, ' Is <b>Sister Mary</b> leaving, too ? '	* søster	
<b>30</b> ' Yes, she's a <b>definite</b> (sg.) together with a few others.'	* en sikker person	
Some nuns are <b>definitely</b> leaving the convent.	* helt afgjort / bestemt	
Will they leave the convent <b>never to return</b> ?	* for aldrig at vende tilbage	
Will they leave <b>never to come back</b> (eE)? Yes <b>definitely</b> .	* =	* helt sikkert / bestemt
Having <b>faced, gone through</b> and <b>survived</b> a terrible <b>ordeal</b> , the nuns will leave <b>never to go back</b> (eE).	* stå overfor > * gennemgå > * overlevet * <<<	* prøvelse
Will they change their mind <b>at the ( very ) last moment</b> – will they do it <b>in the nick of `time</b> ? – <b>Definitely</b> not.	* i (aller-) sidste øjeblik * = ( * lille hak )	* afgjort bestemt
<b>Decisive</b> people act with <b>decision / decisiveness</b> ,	* beslutsom	* -hed
<b>Indecisive</b> people act with <b>indecision / indecisiveness</b> .	* ubeslutsom	* -hed

## BEGGARS CAN'T BE CHOOSERS

244 As they desert the convent their whole **life turns around**.

Times of great change are times of great **uncertainty**.  
ûn'sê~nti

**There is great uncertainty about the nuns' future.**

There is great **uncertainty as to their future**.

The nuns have to face life's **uncertainties in the extreme**.

Leaving the convent, the ex-nuns expected to be **welcomed**

as religious **refugees** simply **seeking`refuge from** the prior>  
refju`dŝi~z  
**ess' victimization and persistent pitiless persecution.**

It **turns ( people's / some ) heads** when the ex-nuns,

**10 wearing ordinary clothes**, are recognized in the town.

' Isn't that The Novice over there ? ' a **man** asks his wife.

' I'm **not sure** – I'm **not certain**, ' she answers.

In a **poor** part of the town, inhabited by **poor** people,

a landlady agrees to **rents a spare room (out) to** the ex-nuns.

**Living in ( extreme ) poverty**, people in the neighbourhood

**are hard up**, being **broke / E skint** most of the time.

If not **desperately poor** most families are **extremely poor**

so the children there grow up **dirt`poor (A)**.

As the ex-nuns' decision to desert the convent

**20 is widely blamed for** their troubles **things turn out** badly  
 after their **desertion from** the convent.

The nuns don't know who to **turn to** for help.

Many of the townspeople **glare at the deserting** ex-nuns  
di`zê~ting  
 accusing them of **turning traitor to** God.

People seem to **have a low / poor opinion of** the ex-nuns.

**Misled by** the prioress' **warped** ideas of guilt and sin,

people in general **take / have no pity on** the ex-nuns.

**Ignoring the fact that** rumours are an **unsafe guide**,  
ûn'seif

people **look down on** the ex-nuns as **undeserving renegades**.

**30 Feeling no pity for** them and **for** what they have endured,

people in general neither **pity** the ex-nuns nor their sufferings.

**It's a pity to succumb** to somebody's **warped mind**.

( It's a ) **pity ( that )** people **yield to prejudice** when the ex-

nuns **request that** they are treated like human beings.

Some people **clamour ( to have )** the ex-nuns **banished**

( **from** the town ), while some **cynical** men try to **lure** the nuns

**into ( having ) improper relationships with** them.

It can be difficult to **figure ( ) out a wooer** and his **intentions**.

\* tiggere

\* vælger

~ ... har intet valg

\* liv >

\* vendes op og ned

\* usikkerhed  
 uvished

\* ... med hensyn til / vedrørende

\* =

\* usikkerhedsmomenter

\* i ekstrem grad

\* modtage ng. godt

\* flygtning

\* søge >

\* tilflugt fra ngt.

\* offergørelse \* vedholdende \* nådesløs \* forfølgelse  
 vedvarende

\* få folk til at vende hovedet, vække opmærksomhed  
 komme bagpå , overraske

\* bære >

\* almindelig

\* klæder, tøj

\* ( ægte- ) mand

\* sikker / helt sikker

\* fattig

\* udleje

\* ekstra værelse

\* ( & yderste ) fattigdom

\* uden penge

\* =

\* =

\* desperat ...

\* ekstremt ...

\* lud fattig

\*

\* i bred almindelighed

\* få skylden  
 for ngt.

\* udvikle sig  
 + adj.

\* frafald / flugt fra ngt.

\* henvende sig til

\* se / stirre vredt på

\* frafalde  
 svinge

\* vende sig som forræder mod ng.

\* have en ufordelagtig mening om ng.  
 ~ tænke ilde om ng.

\* vildledt af ngt.

\* forkvaklet

\* få medlidenhed med  
 forbarme sig over

\* få / have medlidenhed /  
 have medfølelse med ng.

\* ignorere ( det faktum ) at - \* rygte \* usikker \* vejleder  
 upålidelig

\* se ned på ng.

\* ufortjenende

\* overløber

\* føle ... for ng. / ngt.

\* have ... med ng. / ngt

\* det er synd  
 og skam at -

\* bukke under for >

\* forskruet \* sind

\* =

\* give efter for >

\* fordomsfuldhed

\* anmode om at -

\* højlydt kræve ( at - ) ng.

\* forvist

\* fra ngt.

\* kynisk, følelseskold

\* lokke ng. >

\* ind i >  
 ( til at have > )

\* usømmeligt ( seksuelt ) >

\* forhold til ng.

\* gennemskue >

\* bejler

\* hensigter

<b>245</b> The ex-nuns hope for a <b>`definite offer of a job</b> .	* klar, tydelig utvetydig	* tilbud om ngt.
They <b>offer</b> their <b>labour to</b> all kinds of employers.	* tilbyde >	* arbejdskraft      * til ng.
They <b>offer</b> all kinds of employers their labour.	* - - - ng. ngt.	
Their <b>offers</b> are, however, <b>turned down / declined</b>	* afslå >	* tilbud
all the time, even if the jobs are <b>poorly paid slave `labour</b> .	* dårligt	* slavearbejde
<b>Refusing to employ</b> any of the nuns, most employers	* afslå at -	* ansætte ng.
<b>waste no time ( in ) turning ( ) down</b> the ex-nuns' <b>offers</b> .	* afslå >	* tilbud
<b>Declining to take `on / hire</b> any of them <b>as</b> anything,	* ( høfligt ) ... * ansætte / E hyre ng.	* som ngt.
the employers <b>turn ( ) down</b> the ex-nuns <b>for</b> all kinds of jobs	A & ansætte fast	
<b>10 by thinking ( ) `up</b> all kinds of <b>pathetic / pitiable</b> excuses.	* afvise ng.	* til ngt.
Some employers <b>beg off</b> at the last moment.	* finde på ngt.	* ynkelig ( undskyldning )
So the ex-nuns <b>meet / are met with pitiful</b> excuses all over	* bede sig fritaget / undskyldt	
although they expect a fee no more than <b>pathetically low</b> .	* møde / mødes med >	* ynkelig ( undskyldning )
Problems of finding work present themselves <b>at every turn</b> .	* ynkeligt >	* lav
Ready to <b>settle for</b> any <b>pitiablely / pitifully</b> low fee,	* ved enhver lejlighed, igen og igen	
the ex-nuns still hope that a <b>job</b> will <b>turn up</b> .	* stille sig tilfreds / lade sig nøje /	* ynkelig ( lav )
Their hopes for a job are never <b>postponed indefinitely</b> ,	tage til takke med ngt.	
but it <b>worries</b> them that a <b>solution to</b> their <b>problems</b> will	* job >	* dukke op
never <b>turn up</b> even if they <b>worry at</b> the problem all the time.	* udsætte ngt.	* på ubestemt tid
<b>20</b> Their whole future now seems <b>uncertain</b> .	* det bekymrer ng. at -	* løsning på >      * problem
Having to face and <b>endure harsh conditions</b> , the ex-nuns	* dukke op	* tumle med ( problem )
<b>live in / under conditions</b> characterized by <b>`abject poverty</b> .	* usikker	
<b>Hard up for</b> work, the ex-nuns must <b>lower themselves</b>	* udholde >	* barske      * forhold
<b>to live as beggars</b> at a <b>low</b> or <b>lower</b> , if not the <b>lowest</b>	* under forhold	* håbløs / ydmygende      * fattigdom
or <b>lowermost position in society</b> , their income <b>at lowest</b> .	* være i mangel af ngt.	* nedværdige sig
The ex-nuns have to <b>beg – beg ( for )</b> money and food.	* tigger	* lav      * -ere      * -est
As people often <b>turn</b> the ex-nuns <b>from</b> their doors,	* = lowest	* position >      * i samfundet      * i bund
the ex-nuns have to <b>beg from</b> people in the streets too.	* tigge >	* ... om ngt.
Feeling a <b>certain</b> coldness in people's manners, they	* ~ vise ng væk fra ngt.	
<b>30 insecurely beg ( for )</b> money <b>from</b> people in the streets.	* tigge fra ng.	
' Can you <b>spare</b> a penny ?' the ex-nuns <b>request</b> and <b>beg</b> .	* vis	
' Can you <b>spare me</b> a penny ?' the ex-nuns <b>beg people</b>	* usikker / utryk ved situationen	* tigge efter ngt. fra ng.
Begging <b>is anything but</b> a <b>secure way to</b> make a living.	* undvære ngt	* spørge høfligt      * tigge / bede
<b>With little success beg</b> money <b>from</b> people in the streets.	* ... ngt. til ng.	* ... ng.
Poverty <b>causes</b> great <b>hardship for</b> the ex-nuns.	* alt andet end	* sikker måde at
<b>Eking out</b> a <b>living / an existence</b> in a <b>shed</b> ,	det er synd at sige at -	( sikker levevej )
they are so <b>poor ( that )</b> they can't afford to buy new clothes.	* med meget lidt succes	* tigge ngt. fra ng.
They are <b>too poor to</b> spend money on anything <b>but</b> the rent.	* medføre >	* besvær og modgang
In the night they <b>huddle together</b> for <b>warmth</b> .	* udstrække >	* livs- / eksistensgrundlaget      * skur
	~ hutle sig igennem, klare sig majsommeligt	
	* fattig	
	* for fattig til at -	* undtagen ngt.
	* klumpe sig sammen	* ( for at få ) varmen

**246 Begging** from door to door, the ex-nuns **beg** money,  
and, in order to **eke** ( ) **out** their money, they **beg** food too.

Many doors are **secured with door chains**.

A door chain is an **added insurance against intruders**.

Kitchens of the bourgeoisie often **have** some food **to spare**.

**With varying success** the **pitiable / pitiful / pathetic**  
ex-nuns manage to **beg** food **from** these kitchens.

Making a **feeble / pathetic / pitiable / pitiful** attempt  
to smile, the ex-nuns **pathetically** beg, ' Could you **spare** me  
**10 a slice of** bread, or **spare** a **cup of** milk ( **for** me ) ? '

Having to **resign** themselves to begging, they hope for  
food which **is going spare** or **going begging** (E/E).

Apologizing for the **intrusion**, the nuns **beg** **leave**  
**to rummage around in waste bins for** edible foods.

So **pitiablely** having had a **rummage around in** the bins,  
they **pitifully** have to **be content with leftovers / scraps**.  
As their **efforts** often **turn up nothing**, the **poor** ex-nuns

are so **beggarly** that their **poverty beggars belief**.

**Suffering** severe financial **hardship**, the **beggarly** ex-nuns

**20 are so poor** that their **beggary beggars description**.

It **beggars belief** that things could have gone this bad.

Getting work, the **pathetic creatures** would **save** begging.

Having a job would **save** the **pitiable / pitiful** creatures  
**going cap in hand**, and **save** ( them ) a lot of trouble.

They are never **given** a **fair crack of the whip** (E).

**Going cap in hand**, the ex-nuns **pitifully** ask people  
in the streets, ' Do you have any **spare** **cash** ? ' but even if  
the ex-nuns are a **pathetic / pitiable / <ful sight**, most people  
answer **pitilessly**, ' I'm afraid I haven't got any **spare** **change**.'

**30 Hard up for** proper **means** of **sustenance**,  
often without **sustenance**, the ex-nuns are in a **pitiable state**:  
**pathetically / pitiablely / pitifully** thin, just a **scrap** of a **thing**.

Just a few people **spare a thought for** the poor.

The ex-nuns have to **be content with poor** food.

On a lucky day they manage to get a **surplus of** food.

Even if they have to **make do with** poor food,  
( **just** ) **for once** the ex-nuns have **enough and to spare**.

They **eke** ( ) **out** the food and can't **afford to be particular**.

\* tigge \* ... ngt.

\* få ngt. til at strække sig

\* sikre med \* sikkerhedskæde

\* ekstra \* sikring imod > \* indtrængende person  
yderligere  
\* ~ have ngt. i overskud / til overs

\* medynkvækkende,  
ynkværdig, ynkelig  
\* tigge ngt. fra

\* svagt, mat / ynkeligt / = / =

\* medynkvækkende \* skive af ngt.  
ynkværdigt, ynkeligt  
\* undvære > \* kop ( mælk ) \* til ng.

\* indstille sig på / affinde sig med /  
slå sig til tåls med ( at ) ngt.  
\* ~ ngt. er til overs \* ngt. ingen vil have

\* indtrængen \* bede / tigge om tilladelse >

\* til at - \* rode rundt i > \* affalds \* bøtte \* efter ngt.  
& gennemrode skraldespand  
\* roden rundt i ngt.

\* medynkvækkende \* være tilfreds med > \* madrester

\* anstrengelser \* ikke blive til noget \* fattig

\* yderst fattig \* fattig- \* trodse / \* ~ enhver forestilling  
dom overgå >

\* lide > \* ( økonomisk ) \* yderst fattig

\* fattig \* yderste fattigdom \* << beskrivelse

\* trodse / overgå enhver forestilling at -

\* medynkvækkende \* skabning \* spares /  
~ stakkels være fri for at -  
\* spare ng. for \* ~ stakkels

\* gå med hatten i hånden \* spare ( ng. for ) ngt.  
/ tiggegang, være ydmyg  
\* ~ få en ærlig chance

\* <<< \* medynkvækkende

\* ~ småpenge

\* ( med-) ynkverdigt ( syn )

\* ubarmhjertigt \* ~ småpenge

\* manglende ngt. \* middel til > \* føde, næring  
~ føde- / næringsmidler  
\* føde, næring \* i en ynkelig forfatning

\* medynkvækkende / ynkverdigt ( tynd ) \* ~ tynd splejs

\* ofre > \* en tanke på ng.

\* være tilfreds / tage til takke med ngt. \* ussel

\* overskud af ngt.

\* klare sig / tage til takke med ngt.

\* ~ ( bare ) for en gangs skyld \* ~ mere end nok

\* få ngt. til at strække sig \* tillade sig at - \* kræsen

<b>247</b> The ex-nuns <b>save</b> some of the food <b>for tomorrow</b> .	* gemme ngt. til >	* i morgen
They <b>save</b> the rest of the food and have it the next day.	* gemme ngt.	
They always <b>save</b> some food <b>for</b> those of them who're late.	* ... ngt. til ng.	
They always <b>save</b> these ex-nuns some of the best food.	* = ( V + obj. + obj. )	
<b>On the rare occasion when</b> they share a <b>pitcher / jug of</b>	* ved den sjældne /	* krukke
<b>cider</b> , it has been <b>saved for a special occasion</b> .	~ en sjælden lejlighed når - * = * gemme til ng&t. * særlig * lejlighed	
The situation <b>takes a turn for the worse</b> when the landlady	* tage en drejning /	
<b>does / makes a U-turn on</b> her <b>promise</b> to help the ex-nuns.	vending til det værre * kovending mht. >	* løfte
She suddenly <b>goes back on / walks out on</b> her promise.	* løbe fra / svigte ngt.	
<b>10 Is nothing sacred ?</b>	* er intet helligt	
It represents a <b>volte-face in</b> confidence	* kovending i forhold til ngt.	
when the landlady <b>clamours for</b> a <b>rent rise</b> ,	* gøre højtlydt krav på ngt.	* ( hus-) lejeforhøjelse
and further more <b>demand</b> s a <b>security deposit</b> .	* kræve ngt.	* huslejedepositum
As they can't pay the <b>overdue</b> rent, the landlady <b>turns out</b>	* forfalden	* smide ng. ud
the ex-nuns; she <b>turns</b> them <b>out of / from</b> their <b>habitation</b> .	* ... af	* bolig
Seeming <b>destitute of</b> ordinary human feelings,	* blottet for ngt.	
the landlady <b>turns</b> the <b>blustering</b> novice <b>out</b> .	* smide ng. ud	* højtråbende
The ex-nuns <b>bluster</b> but can do nothing.	* råbe op ( i tom trusel / protest )	
<b>Going through trying times</b> , the ex-nuns are left complete	* gå igennem > * anstrengende, udmatende	* tider
<b>10 `dstitute</b> , now facing <b>destitution</b> and <b>homelessness</b> .	* subsistensløs * ...-hed * hjemløshed	
The nuns have to <b>beg permission to</b> sleep in people's	* bede / tigge om at -	* tilladelse til at -
<b>`outbuildings</b> or <b>outhouses</b> (E).	* udhus	
( An <b>outhouse</b> (A) is a <b>toilet</b> in a small building <b>of its own</b> . )	* das, lokum * toilet	* for sig selv
The ex-nuns may <b>come across / (up)on</b> a building	* tilfældigt støde på ngt.	
<b>standing</b> completely <b>abandoned / deserted / forsaken</b> .	* stå forladt	
If they find a(n) <b>abandoned / deserted / forsaken</b> building	* =	
it is, however, usually already a refuge for	*	
<b>abandoned / deserted / forsaken</b> cats or <b>dogs</b> .	* forladt * kat	* hud
People sometimes <b>abandon / desert / forsake</b> their pets.	* forlade ng.	
<b>30 Turning</b> their <b>back on</b> their cats and dogs,	* =	
they simply <b>walk out on</b> them.	* =	
<b>Under</b> a most <b>possible / likely / plausible</b> scenario,	* under > * muligt / sandsynligt / =	* scenarie
the ex-nuns will, just like the rest of <b>the destitute</b> ,	* de subsistensløse	
have to <b>compete with forsaken</b> cats and <b>dogs for shelter</b> .	* forladt * kat	* hund
The ex-nuns <b>feel unsafe, unwanted, and alone</b> .	* føle sig > * utryg * uønsket	* alene
<b>In a disturbed state</b> of mind, <b>struggling against</b> poverty,	* i rystet / * sindstilstand * kæmpe mod ( fattigdom )	
and <b>feeling lonely</b> and <b>insecure</b> , the ex-nuns have to	forstyrret * føle sig > * ensom	* usikker, utryg
<b>convince / persuade</b> themselves <b>that</b> life is still <b>worth</b> living.	* overbevise sig selv om at -	* værd at -
<b>Figure on yourself being in the same boat !</b>	* forestille sig ng. ⇔ at -	* være i samme båd / ~ situation

<b>248 Having a sense of guilt</b> , The Novice has <b>feelings of guilt</b>	* have >	* skyldfølelse	* = >
<b>about</b> having <b>brought</b> her <b>sisters into</b> utter <b>misery</b> .	* over at - * bringe >	* medsøster	* udi elendiighed
Even if she could <b>bear / endure ( times of ) hardship</b> ,	* bære / udholde >	* tider med >	* modgang
The Novice, who has seemed quite <b>sure of herself</b> ,	* selvsikker		
is now beginning to feel <b>unsure of herself at times</b> .	* usikker på >	* sig selv	* til tider
As the ex-nuns <b>suffer</b> many <b>hardships</b> , their <b>confidence /</b>	* lide under >	* genvordigheder	* selvtillid
<b>( self-) assurance</b> seems to <b>desert</b> them <b>in periods of time</b> .	* selvtillid	* svigte ng.	* i perioder
Each of the ex-nuns, <b>in turn</b> , describe their <b>troubles</b>	* efter tur		* trængsler
and the <b>hardship(s) of</b> poverty and destitute.	en efter en		problemer
	* genvordighed (-er) ved ngt.		
<b>10</b> The ex-nuns <b>struggle to gain a livelihood</b> not to end up	* kæmpe for at - * skaffe ( sig ) >	* udkomme, levebrød	
in the <b>poorhouse</b> or <b>workhouse</b> as the <b>worst-case scenario</b> .	det daglige brød / til dagen og vejen		
på- / puêhaus	* fattighus / -gård	* = * ~ værst tænkelige	* scenario
The ex-nuns <b>have misgivings about</b> the future.		= skræksscenario	
	* nære betænkelighed for / bekymring over for		
	/ bange anelser om ngt.		
They <b>have grave misgivings about</b> living as beggars	* ... alvorlig ... at -		
<b>for the indefinite future</b> , but still <b>show definite signs of</b>	* for fremtiden indtil videre	* vise tydelig tegn på at -	
<b>resigning</b> themselves <b>to</b> their fate.	* indstille sig på, affinde sig med		
None of them <b>feel(s) safe</b> in the streets ( <b>all</b> ) <b>on</b> their <b>own</b> .	slå sig til tåls med, underkaste sig		
	* føle sig sikker		* ( helt ) alene
Some streets are completely <b>deserted</b> at night.	/ tryk		
	* øde, mennesketomme		
People are <b>careful where</b> to go as some <b>deserted</b> streets	* forsigtig med hvor -		* =
are not <b>safe for</b> anyone at all <b>to</b> walk in during the night.	* sikre		
<b>20</b> Although they <b>feel unsafe</b> walking alone at night,	* utryk		
the ex-nuns sometimes have to go despite their <b>misgivings</b> .	* betænkelighed, bekymring		
	bange anelser		
The <b>careworn</b> ex-nuns are extremely <b>poor ( E&amp; off )</b>	* forgræmmet		* fattig
so having barely enough food to <b>sustain</b> them, their <b>health</b> is	* holde ng i live.		* helbred >
gradually <b>ravaged by malnutrition / undernourishment</b> .	* hærget af >	* dårlig ernæring	* underernæring
		fejlerernæring	
The <b>undernourished</b> ex-nuns are <b>in a poor condition</b> .	* underernæret	* dårlig sundheds- / helbredstilstand	
<b>Being in poor health</b> , they <b>feel</b> and <b>are</b> very <b>poorly (E)</b> .	* =	* føle sig >	* være >
			* syg
When people that the ex-nuns <b>turn to, do</b> them <b>a bad turn</b> ,	* henvende sig til ng.		* dårlig tjeneste
the ex-nuns <b>abandon</b> themselves <b>to despair</b> and grief.	* give sig hen / hengive sig til >		bjørnetjeneste
			* fortvivlelse
Their looks haven't survived the <b>ravages of time</b> .	* tidens tand		
<b>30</b> Her hair already <b>turning grey</b> E/A <b>gray</b> , one of the young	* blive >		* grå
ex-nuns <b>turns into</b> a women with a pessimistic <b>turn of mind</b> .	* blive til ngt.	* tænke måde, tankegang	
		følelsesliv	
Another one <b>turns in on herself</b> and stops communicating.	* vende sig ind i sig selv		
<b>In fragile health</b> , they all <b>have</b> their <b>fears</b> and <b>insecurities</b> .	* i skrøbelig helbredstilstand	* nære frygt og føle sig	
		usikker / utryk	
Their facing <b>harsh realities of</b> poverty	* barske >		* realiteter ved ngt.
eventually <b>sends</b> the ex-nuns <b>into the depth of despair</b> .	* sende ng. >		* i håbløshedens dyb
It's a <b>hardship for</b> them <b>to</b> make a living, and <b>with every</b>	* hård kamp for ng. at -		* for hver >
<b>day that passes</b> , they become ever more <b>despairing</b> .	* dag der går		* fortvivlet
Their desperate situation <b>is</b> the <b>despair of</b> The Novice;	* være ngs. anledning til fortvivlelse		
if they <b>can't face ( their ) living, what will become of</b> them ?	* ~ ikke kan	* at leve /	* hvad vil der blive af ng.
	udholde >	( deres ) liv	~ hvordan vil det gå ng.



<b>249</b> In an <b>exposed position</b> , it's hard to <b>insure</b> oneself	* i >	* udsat position	* sikre sig >
<b>against ulterior motives</b> and <b>false promises</b> .	* mod bagtanker		* falske løfter
<b>Driven to despair</b> , one of the ex-nuns <b>neglects</b> advice,	* forsømme / tilsidesætte		
and <b>turn to</b> drink, crime, and <b>prostitution</b> to survive.	undlade / se stort på ngt.		
	* ty / forfalde til ngt.		* prostitution
<b>Neglecting to</b> take advice to <b>insure</b> herself <b>against</b> being	* forsømme / tilsidesætte /	* sikre sig mod at -	
misled, she <b>abandon</b> herself to <b>vice</b> as a <b>last / final resort</b> .	undlade at -		
	* give sig hen / * moralsk fordærv	* sidste udvej /	
<b>In despair</b> and <b>desperation</b> , she <b>disregards / ignores</b>	hengive sig til > usædelighed, prostitution	tilflugt	
all advice, and <b>resorts to</b> ( practicing ) prostitution.	* fortvivlelse * desperation * & se bort fra	* =	
	håbløshed		
	* tage sin tilflugt / ty til ( at - ) ngt.		
Unable to <b>bear / endure</b> being poor, she becomes a <b>whore</b> .	* udholde at -		* luder
<b>10</b> She couldn't <b>bear / endure</b> ( to live in ) <b>destitution</b> .	* ... ( at ) ngt		* armod
She has to be very <b>careful who</b> she has a relationship with.	* forsigtig med hvem -		
The ex-nuns' <b>hardship</b> seems to <b>endure</b> .	* genvordigheder	* blive / vare ved	
Even if their misery <b>endures</b> for years, The Novice <b>bears /</b>	* =		* i årevis
<b>endures</b> her <b>misfortunes</b> bravely <b>without resort to</b> any <b>vice</b> .	* bære / udholde sine	* uden tilflugt til >	* last
	genvordigheder ( tappert )		uvane
<b>Turning</b> ( her <b>attention</b> ) to common sense instead of	* ty til ngt.		
the Bible, The Novice still manages to <b>lead a blameless</b> life,	( vende sin opmærksomhed i retning af ngt. )		
and manages to <b>fend for</b> herself <b>blamelessly</b> .	* føre et moralsk uangribeligt		
	* klare sig selv		* <<
She'll never <b>forsake</b> her principles based on reason.	* forlade / svingte ngt.		
<b>In the last resort</b> , she's <b>guided</b> by her <b>sureness</b> , as she	* i sidste ende	* sikker overbevisning	
<b>20</b> never <b>loses</b> her <b>sureness that</b> she did the right thing.	/ instans		
	* ... om at -		
She'd <b>certainly / definitely</b> never <b>return to</b> the convent.	* bestemt / afgjort	* vende tilbage til ngt.	
Her friends may <b>rest assured that</b> she'll never return.	* være forvisset om at -		
<b>Days turn into weeks, weeks turn into months,</b>	* dage bliver til uger etc.		
<b>months turn into years</b> and still there's no change.	* =		
Badly <b>turned out</b> , The Novice one day <b>comes struggling</b>	* påklædt	* komme >	* kæmpende sig >
<b>onward(s)</b> in the <b>blustering / blustery wint(e)ry</b> weather.	* afsted / fremad	* stormfuld	* vinter-
<b>Turning the corner</b> , she <b>bumps into</b> a stranger ( that )	* dreje om hjørnet		* støde ind i ng&t.
she didn't <b>sense</b> come / coming.	* opfatte / fornemme + inf. / -ing		
' I <b>beg your pardon</b> , I didn't see you,' the stranger	* det må De meget yndskyldte		
<b>30</b> <b>exclaims apologetically, assuming</b> it to be his fault	* udbryde * undskyldende	* antage /	
<b>Presuming</b> him to be dangerous, she <b>turns</b> and runs away.	êpâlê`d\$etikli	fornemme at ngt. er ngt.	
	* antage / fornemme at ngt. er ngt.	* vende om	
<b>Sensing</b> danger, <b>sensing</b> ( that ) she might be in danger,	* ... at -		
she <b>turns into</b> a narrow street but <b>stumbles</b> and falls.	* dreje ind i ( på ) ngt.		* snuble
<b>Hurrying to help</b> her, and <b>get / raise</b> her to her <b>feet</b> ,	* skynde sig at - * hjælp ng. at -	* få ng. på benene	
the stranger <b>makes certain / sure</b> (that) she <b>wasn't hurt</b> .		( fødderne )	
	* sikre sig /	* ikke slået sig	
As she <b>gets / rises to</b> her <b>feet</b> and <b>isn't hurt</b> , the stranger	forsikre sig om at -	/ kommet til skade	
	* komme på benene	* =	
<b>senses how</b> to <b>behave</b> when he gives her a <b>pitying</b> look.	* fornemme hvordan at - * opføre sig	* medfølende	
		medlidende	
Giving her a <b>pitying</b> smile, he <b>senses who</b> she might be	* =	* =	
as he <b>pityingly</b> realizes how <b>poorly dressed</b> she is.	* =	* fattigt, lurvet	* klædt

**250 Struggling for breath**, The Novice hesitates a moment  
bre#

to let her **breathing return to normal** before she looks up.

Her mouth **quivers** in the hint / **suspicion** of a smile

as he mentions his name, and she recognizes the stranger.

There's an **air of mercifulness** about this **spare** gentleman,  
so The Novice **senses** ( **that** ) she can trust him.

**To** her **certain knowledge**, he is the son of the **innkeeper**  
but she isn't **sure of** his name; she isn't **certain of** it.

He isn't **sure** ( **that** ) he hasn't seen her before.

**10** He isn't **certain** ( **that** ) he has seen her before.

He isn't **sure** – he isn't **certain**.

He has a **vague idea** **that** he has seen her somewhere,  
but doesn't know **for a certainty** / **with certainty**.

As he tries to **reassure** her, and an **uncertain look** **passes**  
**between** them, they smile **uncertainly** at each other.

Walking a little **uncertainly**, her **eyes fill with** **tears**  
as she notices the warmth and **compassion** in his eyes.

Her **fall** in the street **marks a turning point** in her life.

The stranger **pityingly** tries to **comfort** her by mentioning  
**20** the roadside inn, and inviting her to eat dinner with him.

' We'll **give** you a warm **welcome** / **reception** – you're  
**sure of** ( **receiving** / **getting** / **having** / **being met with** )  
a warm **welcome** there – you're always **certain of** ( **receiving**  
/ **having** / **getting** / **meeting with** ) a warm **reception**,

he says, **reassuring** her **that** he just wants to  
**do** her a **good turn** by inviting her to **visit** him at the inn.

Hoping she won't **turn** ( ) **down** his **invitation**,  
he smiles **reassuringly** at her, and as she **returns** his  
**reassuring** smile, he **knows for sure** / **certain that** she  
**30** shall not **refuse** / **decline** his **invitation to visit** him.

**As it turned out**, she was **fortunate to** fall.

**It turned out that** she was **fortunate in** having an accident.

It was **fortunate for** her; it was **fortunate for** her **that** she  
fell as the fall **turned out to be** a **turn(a)round** in her life.

She knows nothing about him **save** his name, **save for**  
his occupation, and **save that** he has a **spare style** of talking.

She knows little about the inn **save that** Innson is working  
there, and that people have warned her against the place.

He covertly **gazes at** her as they **walk together** to the inn.

\* kæmper for > \* ( at få ) vejret

\* vejtrækning \* vende tilbage til > \* det normale  
åndedræt

\* ( mund ) skælve i > \* antydningen af ( et smil )

\*

\* aura / udstråling \* barmhjertighed \* tynd ( og høj )  
af ngt. omkring ng.

\* fornemme at -

\* efter ens sikre overbevisning \* krovært

\* sikker på ngt. \* helt sikker på ngt.

\* ... på at -

\* helt ... på at .

\* sikker \* helt sikker

\* have en svag ide / en anelse om at -

\* med sikkerhed

\* berolige ng. \* et blik udveksles mellem ng.

\* usikkert

\* = \* få tårer i øjnene

\* medfølelse, medlidenhed

\* fald \* markere et vendepunkt ( til det bedre )

\* medfølelse, medlidende \* berolige ng.

\* ~ landevejs- \* kro

\* give ng. en ( varm ) velkomst / modtagelse

\* sikker på ( at- ) ngt. \* få / modtage >

\* en ( varm ) velkomst / modtagelse

\* ... modtagelse / velkomst

\* berolige ng. at -

\* god gerning / tjeneste \* besøge ng. \* kro

\* afslå > \* invitation

\* beroligende \* gengælde

\* = \* vide > \* bestemt / helt sikkert at -

\* afslå \* invitation til at - \* besøge ng.

\* som det skulle vise sig

\* det skulle vise sig at -

\* heldigt for ng. \* ... at -

\* viste sig at være \* vendepunkt ( fra skidt til godt )

\* undtagen \* =

\* ... at - \* enkel \* måde at -  
prunkløs

\* undtagen at -

\*

\* stirre på \* spadsere sammen  
følges ad

## THE NOVICE AND INNISON

<b>251</b> They'll <b>certainly</b> remember that day.	* bestemt helt sikkert
They'll <b>sure</b> (A) remember the day they met.	* =
<b>As it turns out</b> , The Novice and Innison get along very well.	* som det skal vise sig
So the Novice doesn't hesitate to <b>move in with</b> Innison.	* flytte ind hos ng.
<b>What a pity</b> ( that ) they didn't meet earlier.	* sikken en skam
<b>Pity</b> it didn't happen earlier.	* en skam
Among the nuns, the inn had a <b>tarnished reputation</b> .	* blakket / plettet * ry
In spite of her <b>turnabout in</b> outlook ( on life ), the inn has	* kovending i forhold til ng
<b>anyhow</b> / <b>&lt;way</b> / <b>even so</b> remained a <b>turn-off to</b> The Novice.	* alligevel * lystdræber for ng.
<b>10</b> To her surprise, <b>it turned out that</b> Innison is all right.	* vise sig at -
Innison <b>turned out to be</b> a person of <b>plentiful</b> charm.	* ... at være * righoldig
' You must have heard about the rapes, <b>surely</b> ? '	* sikkert da vel / vel da
The Novice <b>enquires</b> ( of Innison ).	* forespørge ( ng. )
' <b>Sure</b> , ' he answers.	* vist så
' <b>Surely</b> you don't think I was responsible for it ? ' she asks,	* da vel
and adds, ' The prioress just put the blame on me. '	*
' <b>Surely</b> that can't be right –	* bestemt
<b>surely</b> we should do something about it, ' he answers. '	* =
Her opinion of him has been <b>turned on its head</b>	* vende ng. på hovedet
as well as his opinion of her has been <b>turned upside down</b> .	* =
<b>20</b> When offering her <b>accommodation(s)</b> / <b>lodging for</b>	* logi ( U E/A pl. ) / =
the <b>night</b> , Innison realizes a <b>certain emotional reaction</b> .	* for natten * vis * følelsesmæssig * reaktion
' You won't go, <b>surely</b> ? – You're <b>surely not</b> thinking of	* da vel ( = surprised(ly) and disbelieving(ly) )
going, are you ? Innison asks her.	* =
' <b>Certainly not</b> , ' she replies, <b>feeling</b> completely <b>at ease</b>	* bestemt ikke * føle sig tryk >
<b>with</b> him, ' I'm just <b>moved / stirred by</b> your kindness. '	* ved ng. * ng. bevæge / røre ng.
As a <b>definite sign of</b> happiness, the <b>affectionate</b> look	* afgjort * tegn på ng. * hengiven tydelig kærligt
on his face is a <b>definite sign that</b> he is happy.	* ... at -
Having a <b>definite feeling that</b> she can trust Innison	* afgjort / tydelig * fornemmelse af at -
<b>in any circumstance</b> , The Novice is <b>in transports of delight</b>	* i enhver tilfælde * ~ være henrykt af > * glæde
<b>30</b> Her <b>fortunes</b> have certainly <b>taken a fresh turn</b> .	* skæbne, held * tage > * ny * drejning
Being <b>on the turn</b> (E), her <b>luck</b> has <b>taken an upward turn</b> .	* ved et vendepunkt * held * tage > * en drejning skæbne til det bedre
Events have certainly <b>taken a dramatic turn for the better</b> .	* tage > * en drejning * til det bedre
The Novice is <b>stunned by</b> the sudden <b>turn of events</b> .	* overvældet * vendepunkt i begivenhederne forbløffet af ng.
It represents a remarkable <b>turn(a)round</b> in her fortunes.	* ~ drejning til det bedre
Her life becomes <b>inextricably bound up with</b> Innison's,	* ( blive ) uløseligt > * forbundet med ng.
and she never has any reason to <b>suspect him of</b> ( having )	* mistænke ng. for ( at ) ng.
an <b>ulterior motive</b> ( <b>for</b> ( his ) acting his way ).	* ~ skjult * motiv, bagtanke * < for / med ( at ) ng.
ùl' tièriè	

252 Unable to <b>define</b> the customer's needs too well,	* definere / bestemme / præcisere ngt.	
Innson has run the inn <b>on a wing and a prayer</b> .	* på et højst usikkert grundlag	
It seems he's a good <b>host</b> but a <b>poor manager</b> .	* vært                      * dårlig / elendig >                      * leder	
As there has been a <b>drop</b> / a <b>fall in profit</b>	* fald i >                      * profit, overskud	
the inn has at times <b>been run at a loss</b> .	* blive drevet med underskud	
Unable to <b>manage on his own</b> , Innson had not only had	* klare sig på egen hånd	
no money <b>to spare</b> , but also <b>incurred a mountain of debts</b> .	* til overs    * pådrage sig >    * ~ kæmpe bunke gæld	
The Novice thinks <b>it's safe to say</b> ( that ) the business	* gå an at -	
needs <b>a bit of / a little ( bit of ) gentle looking after</b> .	* en ( lille ) smule af ngt.                      * en kærlig hånd	
10 It <b>definitely</b> needs <b>a bit of / a little ( bit of ) looking after</b> .	* afgjort                      * =	
As Innson has had difficulties in <b>defining</b> the duties	* bestemt	
of every <b>sphere</b> , he asks The Novice to <b>define</b> the <b>tasks</b>	* definere, afgrænse, angive, forklare	
of every <b>field of activity</b> ahead very clearly.	* bestemme, beskrive, præcisere	
	* område ( arbejds-)                      * =                      * ( arbejds-) opgave	
	hverv, job	
	* =	
	* den ene tjeneste er den anden værd	
	* definerbar etc <<<<	
	* angive / forklare ngt. udtrykt i	
	* fuldføre / færdiggøre ngt.	
	* give ( et ) tab	
	* afkast / udbytte fra >                      * krodift                      * aftage, falde	
		gå ned
	* sikker / vis på at -	* logisk
	* forklaring på ngt.                      * udbytte	
	* helt sikkert	
	* nedgang                      * indtjening	
	* til en vis grad	
	* =	
	* i en vis udstrækning	
	* bede om >                      * mening om ngt.                      * nedgang i ngt.	
	* ~ stille ( ng.) >                      * skarp-                      * spørgsmål                      * til gengæld /	
	sindigt	som svar
	* se på ngt. fra en anden side	
	* =	
	* i en vis udstrækning	
	* have ngt. oppe i ærmet	
	holde ngt. hemmeligt indtil det rette tidspunkt	
	* gøde jorden for ngt.	
	* <<	
	* beredt for                      * ... til	
	* en skam at -                      * forspilde >                      * ide	
	* ... hvis                      * forhaste sig	
	* =	

and **acted prematurely**. [ `premièr\$èli E/A pri~mè`turli ]

<b>253</b> They must seek to improve <b>returns from</b> the business	* afkast / udbytte fra ngt.	
both from the inn and the farm including <b>crops</b> and <b>livestock</b> .	* afgrøde	* besætning
In order to <b>return</b> increased <b>profits</b> , the old-fashioned inn	* give ... overskud	
and the farm <b>belonging to it</b> have to <b>turn into</b> a more	* hørende til ngt.	* blive omdannet til ngt.
<b>productive</b> business.	* tilhørende ngt.	
' <b>Small profits and quick returns</b> ,' The Novice suggests.	* produktiv	
The Novice <b>feels sure</b> ( <b>that</b> ) Innson will agree.	* små fortjenester og hurtig omsætning	
She is <b>pretty sure</b> ( <b>that</b> ) he will agree.	* føle sig sikker på at -	
' Innson <b>is sure to</b> agree,' she says <b>with assurance</b> .	* temmelig sikker på at -	
<b>10</b> He <b>is certain to</b> agree; <b>it is certain</b> ( <b>that</b> ) he will agree.	* være sikker på at -	* med sikker forvisning / overbevisning
Innson accepts her assistance without (any) <b>misgiving(s)</b> .	* ng. vil med sikkerhed gøre ngt.	* det er sikkert at -
The Novice, Innson <b>feels sure</b> , is <b>a safe pair of hands</b> (eE)	* betækelighed, bekymring	
– one of those women who can <b>turn their hand to</b> (doing)	* bange anelser	
almost everything.	* være et godt kort	
	* / sikker på hånden	
	* ( uden videre ) give sig i lag / kast med	
	* gå i gang med, tage fat på	
	*	
<b>Setting / giving</b> her the <b>task of</b> improving the economy,	* sætte ng. til >	* arbejdet / opgaven med at -
Innson <b>entrusts / leaves</b> the <b>task to</b> The Novice.	* betro / overdrage / overlade >	* & hvervet til ng.
<b>Leaving it</b> (up) <b>to</b> her / E& <b>leaving</b> her <b>to carry out /</b>	* overlade det til ng. at -	* udføre
<b>perform / do</b> the <b>task of rectifying</b> the <b>imbalance</b> , he	* & klare opgaven med at -	* rette op på > * ubalancen
<b>entrusts / leaves</b> her <b>with</b> the <b>task of</b> improving the economy.	* ... ng. arbejdet / opgaven / hvervet med at -	
<b>20</b> She's proud to <b>take on / undertake / have</b> the <b>task</b> .	* påtage sig / have opgaven	
<b>Faced / entrusted / left with</b> the <b>difficult task</b>	* stå overfor en svær /	* betroet / overdraget
of <b>putting</b> the economy <b>on</b> a <b>sound basis</b> , she knows that	* vanskelig opgave	opgaven >
<b>completing</b> the <b>task</b> is <b>no easy task</b> ; it's <b>not</b> an <b>easy task</b> .	* ( med at - )	* bringe ( økonomien ) på ret køl
<b>Invaluable</b> in her job, and <b>invaluable for / to</b> Innson and	* fuldføre opgaven etc.	* ingen / ikke nogen let opgave
the inn, The Novice <b>saves no effort to</b> improve the economy.	* uvurderlig i ngt.	* ... for ng.
<b>No effort</b> will <b>be spared to</b> increase <b>revenue(s) / receipts</b> ,	* ikke spare ng. anstrengelser	
reduce costs, and <b>shorten turnaround</b> times.	* ingen anstrengelser	* spares for at
	* forkorte ngt.	* indtægter
The Novice's first <b>task</b> and the <b>main task</b> is to make		* omsætnings-
the <b>cuts</b> necessary to <b>return</b> the inn <b>to profitability</b> .	* ( arbejds- ) opgave	
	* hvern, job	
<b>30</b> They <b>spare no expence</b> in developing the business.	* nedskæring	* bringe ngt. tilbage til
<b>No expence</b> is <b>spared</b> in making the inn more attractive.		* lønsomhed
As her suggestions are not <b>wasted on</b> innson, The Novice	* ikke spare ng. udgifter for at -	
introduces new <b>events</b> , festivals, parties and entertainment	* ingen udgifter spares for at -	
where much of the <b>preparation</b> can be done <b>ahead of time</b> .	* forspilde ngt. på ng.	
You are <b>assured of</b> a warm welcome at the inn.	* begivenhed	
The staff must do their best to <b>make sure</b> ( <b>that</b> )	* forberedelse	* i forvejen
the guests enjoy their visit; so the staff do their best <b>whatever</b>	* forsikret om / sikker på ngt.	
to <b>make certain</b> ( <b>that</b> ) the guests <b>feel</b> very welcome,	* sikre sig at -	
and <b>at ease</b> / never <b>ill at ease</b> .	* ~ under alle omstændigheder	
	* sikre sig at -	* føle sig >
	* velkommen	
	* veltilpas	* utilpas

<b>254</b> As the inn is <b>overdue for innovation</b> , The Novice	* for længst være moden til ngt.	* nyskabelse
<b>turns</b> her <b>hand to conversion, renovation, and rebuilding</b> .	* forandring til andet formål * renovering * ombygning	
Some <b>oddity</b> and some <b>oddities</b> have to be changed	* mærkværdighed	* & sære egenskaber / ting
but she takes care neither to <b>gild the lily</b> ,	* forgylde	* liljen
nor to <b>throw the baby out with the bathwater</b> .	~ ødelægge noget i et forsøg på at forbedre det	
As the inn has been called ' The <b>Duck</b> and the <b>Duckling</b> '	* smide barnet ud med badevandet	
for <b>generations</b> it would be ' <b>sacrilege</b> (U) to alter the name.	* and	* ælling
It would be a <b>sacrilegious</b> act.	* generation	* helligbrøde
sakrê`lidšês	* helligbrødefuld	
The Novice <b>asks</b> ( Innson ) when the inn was founded.	* vanhellig	
	* spørge (ng.) hvxx -	
<b>10</b> He's <b>not sure</b> but he can find out <b>for definite</b> if she likes.	* ikke sikker	* med sikkerhed
As he's <b>not certain</b> , he'll <b>refresh</b> his <b>memory</b> by asking	* ikke sikker	* genopfriske > * sin hukommelse
his father, ' The Old <b>Drake</b> ', who <b>has</b> an <b>excellent memory</b> .	* andrik	* have en fremragende hukommelse
Some people <b>have</b> a <b>memory / mind like a sieve</b> .	* have en hukommelse som en si	
Some old people <b>lose</b> their <b>memory</b> .	* miste hukommelsen	
Some old people <b>have</b> a <b>bad / poor short-term memory</b> ,	* have en dårlig korttidshukommelse	
while they have a surprisingly <b>good long-term memory</b> .	* ... god lamgtidshukommelse	
<b>Having</b> a lot of <b>happy fond</b> , and <b>bad memories</b> , they like	* have ( en masse ) lykkelige, glade, dårlige minder	
to <b>take</b> a <b>walk / trip down</b> the <b>memory lane</b> , often starting	* fortabe sig i minder	
with their <b>earliest / childhood { memories / recollections</b> .	* tidligste / barndoms { minder, erindringer / =	
<b>20</b> In <b>respect of</b> religious <b>dogma</b> (U), some people consider	* med hensyn til ngt.	* tros lære
The Novice to be <b>sacrilegious</b> woman.	* ugudelig	
Most customers, though, no more consider her to be	* profan	
<b>sacrilegious</b> , or to have <b>committed sacrilege</b> .	* <<	* begå > * helligbrøde
Innson <b>has difficulty</b> making calculations.	* besvær med at -	* regne
He <b>has difficulty</b> in learning arithmetic.	* =	* =
As <b>arithmetic</b> isn't Innson's <b>strong point</b> , The Novice	* regning	* stærke side
temporarily wants to <b>spare</b> him <b>the difficulty of reckoning</b> ,	* spare ng. for > * det svære ved	* ( be- ) regning
and <b>spare</b> him <b>the difficulties of calculating receipts</b> (pl.)	* = * = * be- / udregne >	* indtægter
and <b>expenditures</b> , and then <b>reckoning</b> a profit or <b>deficit</b> .	* udgifter	* be- / udregne > * underskud
<b>30</b> As <b>keeping</b> an <b>account</b> isn't Innson's <b>strong suit</b> ,	* føre et regnskab	* stærke side
she <b>spares</b> him <b>the trouble of doing</b> (the) <b>accounts</b> ,	* spare ng. for > * besværet med at -	* lave regnskab
and <b>spares</b> him <b>the worry of keeping</b> (the) <b>accounts</b> .	* = * bekymringen mrd at -	( - erne ) * føre ...
So as <b>keeping of accounts</b> isn't Innson's <b>forte</b> ,	* ~ regnskabsføring	* ~ stærke side
<b>accountancy / accounting</b> is <b>outside</b> his <b>province</b> .	* regnskabsvæsen /	* udenfor > * gebet, område
	-føring	
<b>Tasked with</b> accountancy, the Novice <b>spares</b> Innson	* pålagt opgaven med ngt.	* spare ng. for >
the <b>difficulty</b> and the <b>pain</b> of <b>accounting</b> .	* det svære > * pinen ved at >	* ~ føre regnskab
<b>Tasked with doing accounts</b> and <b>keeping accounts</b> ,	* ... at -	* lave > * regnskab * holde ...
the Novice, every day, <b>draws up a statement of accounts</b>	* opstille >	* ~ et regnskab
in <b>items</b> ( <b>of the account</b> ) in an <b>account book</b> .	* regnskabspost	* regnskabsbog

## 255 Keeping accounts of expences and incomes,

The Novice **keep an account of** a profit or a **shortfall**.

**Keeping the accounts up to date** is **laborious business**.

lê`bâ~riês

Once in a while she looks up **briefly**, before she **returns to**

her **figures to resume balancing / closing the account**.

Buying goods, a **buyer** may ask, 'Can I have a **receipt** ? '

Having sold the goods, the **seller makes out a receipt**.

Some goods are **dispatched on receipt of an order form**, and paid **on receipt** (U) ( **of** the goods ).

## 10 A receiver / recipient of some goods or a letter

may **acknowledge receipt** ( **of** the goods or the letter ).

Together with Innson she **examins the accounts**

so they can **draw up a budget, defined as** a plan of action expressed in **money terms**.

A budget **rests (up)on** several **uncertain factors**.

Having **gone over the accounts** and **estimated new costs**, they realize they have to **decrease / reduce** their **spending**.

dî`kri~s

Planning a **decrease / reduction in their expenditure**,

`di~kri~s

hoping their **expenses** will **decrease**, they **revise** the budget.

## 20 The Novice suggests to turn an outbuilding over to a boarding house / guest house / eE lodging house.

When people **find lodgings**, and **live in lodgings**, their **paying for full board and lodging** will, **in turn**, **provide** the restaurant **with a rise in `turnover**.

They start to **turn** ( ) **over** the outbuilding **to** a guest house, **by turning her hand to turning** every room **out** (E), and **turning out** every cupboard and drawer.

**Preparing** each room **for the lodgers / boarders**,

the Novice **makes sure that** all the **shelves** are **secure**.

## 30 A chair doesn't look very secure to The Novice

so Innson **turns** the chair **on its side** to **repair** it.

It seems an easy **repair** until he has to **ransack** the whole house **for** a missing tool.

Having **glances at** the nice face and **neat / trim figure** of his sweetheart Innson **turns** his **attention back to** the work.

Having **resumed** his working **position**, he **resumes fixing** the chair.

At last, Innson is **sure that** all the **furniture and equipment** / every piece of furniture and equipment are / is **secure**.

\* føre regnskaber ( holde regnskab ) med ng. og ng.

\* føre et regnskab med ng.

\* underskud

\* holde regnskabet \* opdateret \* krævende \* arbejde

\* kortvarigt

\* vende tilbage til ng.

\* tal \* genoptage at - \* opføre / afslutte > \* regnskab

\* køber, indkøber

\* kvittering

\* udfærdige ng.

\* =

\* afsende / ekspedere ng.

\* ved modtagelsen \* ordre \* formular

\* ved modtagelsen ( af ng. )

\* modtager af ng.

\* bekræfte modtagelsen ( af ng. )

\* undersøge >

\* regnskabet

\* lægge et budget \* definere / bestemme ng. som ng.

\* penge

\* udtryk

\* hvile på / afhænge af >

\* usikker

\* faktor

\* gennemgå > \* regnskabet \* anslå > \* omkostninger

\* formindske / reducere >

\* pengeforbrug

\* nedgang / reduktion i >

\* udgift (<er )

pengeforbrug

\* udgifter

\* aftage, falde formindskes

\* revidere / omarbejde ng.

\* omdanne ng. til ng.

\* udbygning

\* pensionat

\* finde logi

\* bo i ...

\* betale for > \* ( fuld ) ~ kost og logi

\* som følge heraf

\* forsyne ng. med >

\* stigning i >

\* omsætning

\* omdanne ng. til ng.

\* give sig i kast / lag med

\* tømme og rengøre

\* =

\* gøre ng. parat til ng.

\* loggerende

\* sikre sig at -

\* hylder

\* sikre, stabile fastspændte

\* sikker stabil

\* vende ng. om på siden

\* reparere

\* reparation

\* ransage / gennemsøge ng.

\* for ng.

\* kaste et blik på ng.

\* slank

\* figur

\* vende tilbage til ng.

\* genindtage / vende tilbage til >

\* stilling

\* =

\* istandsætte ng.

\*

\* sikker på at -

\* møblement

+ \* udstyr

= inventar

\* stykke

\* møblement

\* udstyr

\* sikker, stabil

~ møbel

<b>256</b> They can only <b>spare</b> one room <b>for</b> each lodger.	* afse / undvære ngt. til ng.	
The lodgers must pay a <b>returnable</b> / <b>refundable deposit</b> .	* som kan blive tilbagebetalt	* depositum
She wants to <b>turn</b> the inn <b>into</b> a <b>working collective</b> .	* omdanne ngt. til ngt.	* arbejdskollektiv
The idea <b>turns</b> () <b>on</b> Innson.	* opildne ng.	
The other nuns who <b>turned</b> their <b>back on</b> the prioress,	* vende ng. ryggen	
and <b>turned</b> their back <b>on</b> the convent, such as the nun <b>turned</b>	* & forlade	* ng. blevet ngt.
<b>a prostitute</b> , are the <b>obvious</b> candidates for the collective.	* prostitueret	* selvskreven
Members of the collective <b>do</b> any <b>odd jobs in return for</b>	* tage sig af ... forefaldende arbejde	* til gengæld for
a free room, free food and a share of a possible profit. * !	* <i>Look at page 300 !</i>	
<b>10</b> Mainly a women's <b>refuge</b> , the collective also <b>functions as</b>	* refugium	* fungere som ngt.
a <b>refuge for abandoned</b> wives, <b>abandoned</b> husbands,	* ... for ng. * forladt ( hustruer )	* ... ( ægtemænd )
<b>abandoned</b> children, <b>the homeless</b> , and <b>the destitute</b> .	* ... ( børn ) * de hjemløse	* de subsistensløse
<b>Deserted</b> husbands and <b>deserted</b> wives,	* forladt, svigtet	
often <b>abandoned</b> / <b>left to</b> their <b>fate</b> , face different problems.	* overladt til >	* sin skæbne
The Novice's father <b>forsook</b> his wife and children.	* forlade / svigte ng,	
Wives are more often <b>forsaken</b> by their husbands	* =	
as husbands more often <b>walk out on</b> / <b>forsake</b> their wives.	* & gå fra / =	
The collective are helping people without expecting anything	*	
<b>in return beforehand</b> .	* til gengæld	* på forhånd
<b>20</b> A child is found <b>abandoned</b> but unharmed.	* forladt	
The collective don't hesitate to <b>adopt</b> the <b>abandoned</b> child.	* adoptere ng.	
The <b>orphan</b> is treated by everybody as a daughter.	* forældreløs (-t barn )	
As the collective is a <b>haven of peace and safety</b> ,	* fristed ( præget ) af >	* fred og sikkerhed
the members are ready to <b>perform</b> any <b>laborious</b> ,	* udføre >	* arbejdskrævende
<b>thankless</b> and <b>unenviable task</b> .	* utaknemmeligt * lidet misundelses-	* stykke arbejde
Some members are always ready to <b>undertake</b> a <b>daunting</b>	* påtage sig >	* skræmmende
and <b>formidable task</b> even if it may seem an <b>impossible task</b> .	* drabelig, vældig * << * umulig * <<	overvældende, enorm
Some people are only able to <b>carry out</b> a <b>simple task</b> .	* udføre > * simpel / enkel	* <<<
The Novice's idea is not to <b>turn</b> () <b>away</b> anyone	* afvise ( at hjælpe ) ng.	
<b>30 no matter what's</b> their <b>opinion of</b> them <b>at first sight</b> .	* nægte ng. medfølelse	
So anyone who <b>turns to</b> the collective will not be	* uanset hvad - * mening om / * ved første øjekast	
<b>turned away</b> just like that if they are ready to <b>do</b> their <b>best</b> .	* opfattelse af ng.	
<b>Applicants</b> elsewhere usually get a job <b>solely on merit</b> ,	* henvende sig til ng.	
but the collective never <b>rejects</b> applicants who show a will	* afvist	* gøre st bedste
to <b>take part in</b> the daily work <b>to the best of</b> their <b>ability</b> .	* ansøger * udelukkende * udfra fortjeneste	
There's a <b>fellow feeling</b> between everyone.	* afvise ng.	
<b>Taking turns</b> in any kind of work, they all <b>do</b> their <b>best to</b>	* deltage i ngt.	* ~ så godt ng. kan
<b>come up to expectations // live up to</b> their <b>reputation / name</b>	* fællesskabsfølelse ( mellem ng.)	
<b>// live up to</b> the <b>expectations</b> of the other members.	* tage en tørn	* gøre sit bedste for at -
	* leve op til forventningerne	* leve op til sit ry / navn
	* ... ngs. ...	



**257 Opening up a ( whole ) gamut of** new experiences,  
the collective also **offers** practical help and **reassurance**.

Sometimes they **change** their **opinion of** an applicant.

They have to **turn lazy** and **work-shy** applicants **away**.

**For the most part**, though, even a **lazybones** soon  
**turns into** a person **willing to work** ( pred.).

Some people are not **suitable / fit for** even a **simple task**.

**Wasted as** waiters or waitresses, **poor judges of character**  
are not **suitable / fit to get on with** the guests and job.

**10 Not cut out to be** waiters or waitresses, they easily **incur**  
the **displeasure** and **disapproval** of the guests.

**Poacher turned gamekeeper** – turning into a gamekeeper  
**a poacher turned a gamekeeper** had actually **deserted**  
**poaching for game management**

That was a **turn-up for the books**.

As the area is now is relatively **secure from** poachers,  
the game is relatively **secure against / from poaching**.

Always prepared to help people **turning to** them,  
the collective is ready to **do them a good turn**.

**20** Very much, however, **turns (up)on** how much the farm  
is able to produce and the inn is able to **turn `over**  
**to make / earn / turn in /A turn a profit**.

The collective **ensures /eA in>** the **success** of the business.

Never **walking out of** a job, the members of the collective  
**take turns { to do most jobs / (E& in ) doing most jobs**.

They **take turns** ( in most jobs ) to **ensure ( that )**  
the **work** is fairly **shared out / distributed**.

diˈsɪnbjuː-tid / ˈdis -

**Surfing a wave of fellow feeling**,

they **take (E& it in ) turns in** farming, customer service,

**30 food preparation and tidying ( up )**.

They **take ( E& it in ) turns to** farm, and **prepare** food.

They **prepare** the **meals** as they prepare breakfast, lunch,  
dinner and **supper**, **serve** the customers and **tidy (up)**  
the restaurant and the **tap room**.

**Getting on** well, they **take turns to cook**, to **cook** food  
and **cook** meals, and **take turns in cleaning / clearing `up**.

They often **eat supper** late.

**Overdue for a wash**, some of them **have** a ( quick ) **wash /**  
perform their **ablutions** ( hum.) before **having ( a late ) supper**.

\* ~ åbne for > ( \* helt / hel ) \* register / række af ngt.

\* tilbyde / byde på ngt. \* beroligelse

\* mening om ng.

\* afvise \* doven \* arbejdssky

\* for det meste mestendels \* dovenlars / -didrik  
\* blive til ngt. \* arbejdsvillig

\* egnet til ngt. \* = \* simpel, enkel \* ( arbejds-) opgave ukompliceret

\* forspildt som ngt. \* dårlig \* menneskekender

\* egnet til at - \* komme ud af det med ng. / klare ngt.

\* pådtage sig >

\* utilfredshed \* misbilligelse

\* krybskytte, der blev jagtbetjent ~ lovbyrder, der blev lovhåndhæver  
\* en ..., der blev en ... \* gå bort fra / opgive ngt. >

\* krybskytteri \* til fordel for ngt. \* vildtpleje

\* ~ stor overraskelse

\* sikret mod ng.

\* =

\* henvende sig til ng. i sin nød

\* gøre ng. en god tjeneste

\* afhænge af hvxx

\* omsætte ngt

\* give overskud

\* sikre > \* succes

\* bakke ud af / svigte ngt.

\* tage hver sin tørn med / skiftes til at -

\* skiftes \* sikre at -

\* arbejde \* fordele ngt.

\* ~ ride på en bølge af > \* fællesskabsfølelse

\* skiftes med ( at ) ngt.

\* mad tilberedelse \* oprydning

\* tage hver sin tørn på skift med at -

\* tilberede > \* måltid \* ... ( aftensmad )

\* rydde op

\* skænkestue

\* komme ( godt ) \* tage hver sin tørn \* lave / ud af det på skift med at - tilberede ( mad )  
\* ... ( måltid ) \* gøre rent

\* spise aftensmad

\* for længst være \* en gang vask \* tage sig ... moden til ngt.

\* rituelle afvaskninger \* have / få aftensmad ( et sent ) aftensmåltid

<b>258 Taking ( it in ) turns, they make food, make the meals</b>	* ~ på skift	* lave >	* mad	* lave >	* måltid
( <b>cook / make</b> breakfast, lunch, dinner, and supper ),	* tilberede / lave ( morgenmad etc. )				
and <b>clean / clear</b> ( ) <b>up</b> ( the kitchen to make it <b>neat and tidy</b> ).	* rydde ngt. op			* ~ pænt og ordentligt	
So some of them <b>cook for</b> the other ones.	* lave mad til ng.				
They <b>cook a decent / proper meal for</b> the others ones.	* tilberede >	* ordentligt		* måltid til ng.	
They <b>cook</b> them a <b>full / square meal</b> .	* ... ng. >	* fuldt / solidt		* måltid	
When they <b>cook</b> a hot <b>meal for</b> dinner, everybody enjoys	* tilbedede >	* ( varmt ) måltid		* til ( middagsmad )	
the smell of food / their meal <b>cooking</b> in the kitchen.	* tilberedes være under tilberedning				
They may <b>cook porridge for</b> breakfast.	* tilberede ngt. >	* grød		* til ( morgenmad )	
<b>10</b> Some of them <b>turn in</b> (o-f) early to get up early	* tørne ind / gå i seng ( tidligt )				
while others <b>turn in</b> late to <b>carry out</b> and <b>complete a task</b> .	* ... ( sent )	* udføre >	* fuldføre >	* et hverv	
When there's a meeting, the members <b>endeavour</b> to	* anstrenge sig for at - bestræbe sig for / på at -				
<b>turn up on time</b> whether they <b>turn up early</b> or <b>turn up late</b> .	* møde (op)	* til tiden		* tidligt / sent	
They <b>make</b> every <b>endeavour</b> not to <b>turn up too late</b>	* gøre sig alle anstrengelser for ( ikke ) at -			* komme for sent	
They may turn up a few minutes <b>late</b> if a job <b>drags</b> ( <b>on</b> ).	* forsinket			* trække ud	
The rules <b>ensure</b> everybody <b>a voice in a matter</b> .	* sikre ng. ngt.			* at blive hørt medindflydelse	
Innson <b>asks</b> The Novice her <b>opinion on</b> every important	* spørge ng. om >			* mening om ngt.	
decision but everybody has a right to <b>express an opinion</b> ,	* udtrykke en mening				
and <b>express</b> his or her ( <b>own</b> ) <b>opinion</b> .	* ... sin egen ...				
<b>20</b> Everybody is invited to <b>give</b> his or her <b>opinion about</b> how	* give sin mening om ngt.				
the <b>business</b> should be <b>run</b> .	* drive forretning				
Although they <b>have</b> very <b>different opinions on</b> a subject,	* have ... mening om ngt.				
and <b>different opinions about</b> the business, the members	* =				
of the collective <b>turn</b> Innson and The Novice <b>on to</b> new ideas.	* gøre ng. opsat på ngt.				
<b>Opinion</b> (U) <b>is divided on</b> many <b>issues</b> .	* meningerne er delte			* emne, sag stridspunkt, problem	
When someone <b>puts forward / submits a proposal</b>	* ( formelt ) forslag			* fremsætte <	
for <b>consideration</b> , there may be a <b>difference of opinion</b>	* til overvejelse			* meningsforskel	
<b>as to / over</b> the <b>merit(s)</b> of the proposal.	* hvad angår / omkring >			* prisværdighed kvalitet (-er )	
If there's a <b>proposal that</b> a system should be changed,	* forslag om at -				
<b>30</b> there may be a <b>wide</b> or <b>narrow body of opinion</b>	* hel masse / alsidig mængde /			* beskeden mængde /	
that <b>supports</b> or <b>accedes to</b> the <b>proposal</b> .	* bredt udvalg af meninger			* smalt udvalg ... som -	
Which plan to prefer is <b>a matter of opinion</b> ,	* støtte >	* tiltræde		* forslag	
but <b>each case</b> must <b>be considered on its (own)</b> <b>merits</b> .	* et holdningsspørgsmål				
<b>Disagreement</b> often <b>drags</b> ( ) <b>out</b> a discussion.	* ... ud fra sine ( egne ) værdier				
<b>It is proposed that</b> they ( should ) <b>ask</b> ( <b>for</b> ) / <b>have</b>	* uenighed			* trække ngt. ud	
a <b>second opinion</b> in order to <b>form a considered opinion</b> .	* det foreslås at -			* spørge efter / få >	
A member <b>proposes that</b> specialists ( E& should ) be	* ~ en vurdering	* danne sig >	* velovervejet	* mening	
called in so <b>it is proposed</b> to <b>give</b> an <b>independent opinion</b>	* fra anden side				
before a final decision is made.	* ng. foreslår at -				
	* det foreslås at -	* give >	* uafhængig	* vurdering	
	*				

**259** Experts **hold varying opinions** too; they also

have varying opinions as to the **solution to a problem**.

No idea, opinion, or suggestion is **dismissed out of hand**.

As they **get** an **expert opinion**, **opinion is** sometimes **shifting in favour of** or **against** a change.

Often **economic** and **economical considerations** (pl.) rather than practical **considerations decide** a question.

Sometimes none of the members have no time **to spare**.

Orthodox Christians consider it (a) **sacrilege to work** **10** on Sundays so working **more than strictly necessary** on Sundays is **sacrilegious** practice, only done by **sacrilegious** people.

The Novice **expresses** her **own opinion**.

The Novice is a person **with** very **strong opinions**.

The Novice **considers** few things as **sacred cows**.

'These **are** just my **personal opinions**,' she **stresses**.

A **certain amount of** work has to be done on Sundays in order to **secure** an **augmentation of** production and income.

The Novice **expresses** the **opinion that** it's **no sacrilege** **20** to work on Sundays.

**According to** her **opinion** some jobs must be done.

**In** her **opinion** it's **no sacrilege for** anyone **to** work on Sundays in order to **augment** production and income.

**It's** her **opinion that** everybody should be ready to work on a Sunday when a job needs to be done.

The **general opinion is that** some jobs have to be finished **no matter that** it has **turned** Sunday.

Another member who **is** also **of the opinion that** the job should be done **goes all out to support** The Novice saying,

**30** 'If you **want** my **opinion**, it would be **crazy** not **to** finish an **urgent** job even if it's Sunday.'

'**In** my **humble opinion** it would be crazy,' she emphasizes, and goes on, 'It's **safe to assume** ( **that** ) there will always be a demand for food and drink, but despite **our best endeavours** there's always a risk of a **fall** in **turnover**.

The Novice **stresses** the need for economic **sacrifice(s)** at the same time as there must be no **sacrifice** of quality.

The have to **use** all their **creative endeavours** to succeed.

\* have varierende meninger

\* løsning på >

\* problem, opgave

\* affærdige ngt. uden videre

\* få ( en ) ekspertvurdering

\* mening

\* skifte til fordel for / imod ngt.

\* ( drifts- ) økonomiske \* ~ besparelser- \* overvejelser  
mæssige

\* = \* afgøre / bestemme > \* spørgsmål  
sag

\* til overs

\* helligbrøde at -

\* mere end højst / strengt nødvendigt

\* ugudelig  
vanhellig

\* =

\* udtrykke sin egen mening

\* med ... stærke meninger / holdninger

\* betragte ngt. som ngt.

\* hellig ko

\* være ngs. personlige mening  
/ holdning (-er)

\* betone, fremhæve  
understrege

\* vis, ikke nærmere bestemt

\* sikre >

\* forøgelse af ngt.

\* udtrykke den mening at -

\* ingen helligbrøde >

\* at -

\* ifølge ngs. mening / holdning

\* efter ngs. mening

\* helligbrøde for ng. at

\* ( for-) øge ngt.

\* det er ngs. mening / holdning

\*

\* almindelige mening / holdning

\* ~ uanset ( om ) -

\* blive ngt.

\* være af den mening / have den holdning at -

\* gøre alt hvad man kan for at -

\* støtte ng.

\* ønske ngs. mening / holdning

\* tosset ( ikke ) at -

\* presserende

\* skør  
tosset

\* efter ens beskudne mening

\* sikkert og vist at -

\* ngs. bedste >

\* formåen

\* fald i >

\* omsætning

\* fremhæve / understrege ngt.

\* offer

\* ofring  
tab

\* bruge >

\* kreative

\* formåen

**260** The Inn serves good traditional **fare**.

The Novice work out **weekly** and **monthly plans**

but there is nothing **sacred about** the **working hours**.

Innson and The Novice **don't spare themselves** as they

work **mornings, afternoons, and evenings** at all kinds of jobs. \*

**Equally** everybody is willing to **work late** in the evening,  
and the Sundays aren't **sacrosant**.

**In critical times** the members of the collective are willing  
to **make sacrifices** in order to **put the finances on a sound**  
**10 basis**.

**Sacrificing** a promising career **to** join the collective,  
a new member chose to **sacrifice** personal wealt **for**  
the welfare of the collective.

The Novice's **enterprise turns** old practices **upside down**.

As she **gives** new ideas **serious consideration**, new  
approaches to the daily work **turn** old practices **on their head**.

Although she **skillfully navigates** a **complex** discussion,

The Novice sometimes do things herself to **save argument**.

**It's far from certain ( that )** new **working practices**  
**20 will turn out** successfully.

**It's by no means certain ( that )** the new practices  
will **turn out to** be a succes.

Some ideas **deserve / merit** (further) **consideration**  
as it **turns out that** some new practices **fail**.

During some time The Novice **notices** one of the members  
behave differently.

As she **notices** him being **ill at ease at** her presense  
and quite **secretive**, she knows there's something **cooking**.  
`si-krëttiv

So without being noticed, The Novice takes him aside for

**30 a one-to-one / tête-à-tête / one-on-one (A) conversation**.

He immediately breaks down and **admits** his **guilt**.

Some time ago he has been **cooking** the **`books**.

In order to **disguise / hide / mask / veil** his deceit,  
he **cooked ( ) `up** a story, but tormented by bad conscience,  
he never spent the money.

Having faith in his regretfulness, The Novice shows mercy.

As she doesn't want to **cook** his **`goose**,  
she **tempers justice** with **mercy**.

Innson **has no quarrel with** her decision.

\* ( højtids- / restaurations- ) mad

\* uge- / månedsplan

\* helligt omkring

\* ~ arbejdstid

\* ikke skåne sig selv

\* ( daglig ) om morgenen / eftermiddagen / aftenen

\* ligeledes / på samme vis

\* arbejde sent  
& ... over

\* hellig

\* i krisetider

\* bringe ofre

\* rette op på økonomien

\* <

\* ofre ngt. >

\* for at -

\* ofre ngt. til fordel for ngt.

\*

\* fortagsomhed

\* vende op og ned på

\* ofre ngt. >

\* alvorlig overvejelse

\* vende ngt. på hovedet

\* dygtigt

\* styre igennem >

\* indviklet

\* undgå >

\* skænderi

\* langt fra sikkert / givet at -

\* arbejdspraksis

\* vise sig at være + adv.

\* på ingen måde ...

\* vise sig at være ngt.

\* fortjene >

\* overvejelse

\* vise sig at -

\* slå fejl, mislykkes  
ikke fungere

\* bemærke ng. + inf

\*

\* bemærke ng. + -ing

\* ilde til mode ved ngt.

\* hemmelighedsfuld

\* i gære

\*

\* samtale under fire øjne

\* tilstå >

\* brøde

\* fuske med / forfalske regnskabet

\* ( forklåde ) skjule ( maskere / tilsløre ) >

\* bedrag

\* brygge ( historie ) sammen

\*

\*

\* ( tilberede ngs. gås ), ~ ødelægge ngs. muligheder

\* mildne retfærdighed med barmhjertighed  
~ lade nåde gå for ret

\* ikke have nogen indvendinger mod ngt.

<b>261 Bored ( stiff / to tears / to death / out of her mind ) with</b>	* kedet ( til døde ( til tårer / til vanvid ) ) * ved ( at ) ng.
( doing ) her job, a waitress scarcely <b>spares</b> anyone a <b>glance</b> .	* ofre ng. et blik
Innson scarcely <b>spares it a glance</b> .	* ofre det et blik
The Novice who always <b>spares</b> everything a <b>glance</b>	* ... ng.
<b>explains</b> the importance of service <b>to</b> the <b>newcomer</b> .	* forklare ng. ng. ( !! ej VNN !! ) * nyankommen
Working at the inn can be <b>trying</b> , so she <b>prepares</b> a course	* anstrengende, udmattende * tilrettelægge ( kursus )
that <b>prepares</b> all the members <b>for</b> all kinds of services and	* berede ng. for ng.
tasks: <b>customer service</b> , food <b>preparation</b> and <b>food service</b> .	* kundebetjening * ( mad-) tilberedning * -servering
Members of the collective should make an effort to be kind,	*
<b>10 attentive</b> and <b>obliging</b> , and always <b>return a greeting</b> .	* opmærksom * forpligtet * gengælde en hilsen
<b>Realizing</b> the importance of customer service, the waitress	* helt klar over
<b>keeps</b> her <b>eyes peeled / skinned</b> ( <b>for</b> anything and anybody )	* på det rene med
even if the job or the customers are <b>boring</b> her.	* ~ holde skarpt øje * med ng&t. ( skrællet / afskindet )
When a <b>boring</b> customer says, ' I'd like a beer, please, '	* kede ng. *
she <b>attentively</b> replies, ' <b>Certainly</b> , sir, ' even if he's a real <b>bore</b> .	* kedelig, kedsommelig
Some customers <b>guzzle</b> – <b>guzzle</b> beer and <b>guzzle</b> food.	* opmærksomt * så gerne * kedelig person
They eat and drink <b>with</b> wild and <b>reckless abandon</b> .	* bølge, fylde i sig * ... ( øl ) * proppe sig med ( mad ) proppe i sig
One day a guest <b>has the cheek to taunt / jeer</b> the waitress.	* med > * ubesindig * løsslupenhed hensynsløs hæmningsløshed
<b>When drunk</b> , he <b>has the face to taunt</b> her <b>about</b> her	* have den frækhed at - * håne / spotte stikke til ng.
<b>tallness</b> , and <b>cheekily taunt</b> her <b>with</b> a <b>nickname</b> .	* i fuldskab * = * ... for
' Hello <b>beanpole</b> , ' the <b>cad</b> <b>jeers</b> with a <b>cheeky</b> grin.	* store højde * ... med ng.
<b>20 Quick</b> to <b>return</b> his <b>taunt</b> , the <b>quick-witted</b> waitress	* bønne- * sjover, sjuft ( mand, der * håne * flabet stage behandler kvinder dårligt ) hånle
then just <b>returns with</b> a <b>witty sally</b> in order to <b>put a stop to</b>	* kvik til at - * give igen på > * spydighed * snarrådighed
his <b>cheeky</b> behaviour before she <b>resumes</b> her activities.	* give igen * åndfuld * vittig bemærkning * sætte en med > / -rig / indfald, vits stopper for >
Waitresses often have to <b>endure</b> sexist <b>taunts</b> .	* flabet / uforkammet * genoptage / fortsætte ( opførsel ) ( aktivitet )
Although The Novice is able to <b>skillfully turn</b> a conversation	* tåle / udholde ng. * spydighed hånlæg bemærkning
<b>away from</b> an unpleasant subject, they sometimes have to	* behændigt * dreje ng. >
<b>turn a cheeky</b> and <b>trying</b> guest <b>away from</b> the inn.	* bort fra ng.
They <b>turn away</b> heavy <b>drinkers</b> – <b>drunks, drunkards</b> ,	* afvise > * flabet * anstrengende / * fra ng. uforkammet trættekær ( gæst )
<b>30 old soaks</b> , and <b>boozers</b> and other <b>abandoned</b> people	* afvise ng. * drukkenbolte
who <b>conduct</b> themselves with (an) <b>abandoned</b> behaviour.	* ~ svamp * = * hæmningsløs løssluppen
<b>When drunk</b> some people <b>throw tasteless remarks</b>	* opføre sig / føre sig frem *
and, when sober, they try to <b>repair / put right</b> /E& <b>mend</b>	* når de er fulde * udslynge > * smagløs * bemærkning
the <b>damage</b> that their remarks <b>in bad / poor taste</b> have done.	* reparere / ordne >
Most women find drunken men a real <b>turn-` off</b> .	* skade ( ~ gøre skaden god igen * smagløs / den skade god igen som - ) usmagelig
Is drunkenness a real <b>turn-off</b> for the Inn ?	* lystdræber
Yes, <b>more's the pity</b> when people who become <b>abusive</b>	* nedtur
when drunk <b>are enslaved by</b> drunkenness.	* mere er det en skam * voldelig ~ så meget desto værre
Dealing with drunkenness is a <b>trying</b> experience.	* være slave af ng. / ng. gør ng. slave * anstrengende, udmattende ( oplevelse )

262 They <b>churn cream</b> so as when they <b>turn</b> and <b>stir</b> it,	* kærne >	* fløde	* omvælte ngt.	* omrøre ngt.
they <b>turn it to</b> / it <b>turns to</b> { <b>butter</b> and <b>buttermilk</b> .	* omdanne ngt. >	* omdannes /	* smør	* kærnemælk
<b>Making</b> (a) <b>dough</b> , they <b>mix</b> , <b>stir</b> , and <b>blend</b> flour, water	til ngt.	blive til ngt		
and <b>yeast</b> ( <b>together</b> ).	* lave ( en ) dej	* blande ngt.	* røre ngt	* blande ngt.
Having <b>turned</b> the dough <b>out onto</b> a lightly <b>floured</b> table,	* gær			* sammen
they <b>knead</b> the <b>dough</b> before it's left to <b>prove</b> / <b>rise</b> .	* vælte ngt. ud			* melbestrø ngt.
When it has <b>proved</b> / <b>proven</b> / <b>rissen</b> by <b>action of</b> the yeast	* ælte >			* dej
and <b>shaped into</b> portions, the <b>bread</b> is <b>baked</b> in an <b>oven</b> .	* hæve			* virkning af ngt.
When the <b>loaves</b> ( <b>of bread</b> ) are <b>done</b> and <b>cooled</b> (down),	* forme ngt. til ngt.	* bage brød		* ovn
10 she can <b>cut</b> a <b>slice from</b> a ( <b>newly-baked</b> ) <b>loaf</b> .	* brød	* færdig ( -bagt )		* køle ned
She enjoys to have a <b>slice of bread</b> with butter.	* skære en skive af ngt.	* nybagt		* brød
The Novice is going to bake apple <b>turnovers</b> for <b>dessert</b> .	* skive brød			
She uses a <b>chopping board</b> for <b>cutting</b> the apples <b>on</b> .	* lille trekantet / halvmåneformet tærte			* dessert
( In America they use a <b>cutting board</b> for <b>chopping</b> meat,	* skærebræt			* skære ngt. på
fruit and <b>vegetables</b> on. )	* =			* hugge hakke
The choice food is always <b>done to a turn</b> (E).	* grøntsager			
The Novice advises <b>generous</b> use of <b>tasteful raw material</b>	* veltilberedt			
but only <b>sparing</b> use of strong <b>spices</b> .	* rundhåndet	* smagfuld		* råvarer
So the cook uses the tasteful <b>raw material(s)</b> <b>generously</b> ,	* sparsom			* krydderi
20 and the strong spices <b>sparingly</b> .	* råvarer			* rigeligt rundhåndet
They never <b>spare</b> the good raw material or <b>spare</b> the quality.	* sparsomt			
<b>Playing (it)</b> <b>safe</b> , they <b>make sure</b> / <b>certain</b> ( that ) the food	* spare på ngt.			
is <b>thoroughly</b> cooked.	* ikke tage nogen chancer			
<b>Leftover</b> meat is <b>traditionally</b> used in some dishes.	* omhyggeligt ( tilberedt )			
Part of a <b>meal</b> can be <b>prepared</b> while some food is <b>cooking</b> .	* tiloversbleven			* traditionelt
The <b>cook turns</b> the <b>spit</b> so the <b>roast turns steadily</b> ,	* tilberede			* under tilberedelse
and <b>roasts</b> slowly to be <b>done to a turn</b> (E).	* kok * dreje ngt. * stegespid * steg * dreje * jævnt			
Special offers such as <b>spare</b> <b>ribs</b> with <b>parsley</b> sauce	* stege			* tilpas (stegt på alle sider)
help to <b>ensure</b> a fast <b>turnover</b> of <b>stock</b> .	* & revelsben			* persille
30 If a <b>commodity</b> is not <b>in stock</b> , it's <b>out of stock</b> .	* sikre ngt.	* ( hurtig ) omsætning		* varelager
A dish may be <b>garnished</b> with a <b>garnish</b> of <b>chives</b> .	* vare	* på lager		* ~ ikke på lager
The <b>repasts</b> (o-f) are <b>surely square</b> .	* pynte ngt. med ngt. * pynt * purløg ( pl. madlavning )			
' The meal was <b>surely</b> decent – don't you agree ?	* måltid	* helt bestemt / sikkert		* ordentligt
a customer asks his companion.	(formelt kun surely i denne bet.)			* solidt
' Oh yes, the meal was <b>certainly decent</b> /A & infm. –	* bestemt ( efter ens mening )			
It <b>sure</b> was a <b>substantial</b> meal / dinner ', his companion	*			
agrees as the <b>vegetables</b> of the <b>season</b> made a good /	* helt bestemt / sikkert			* ordentligt
an excellent <b>accompaniment to</b> ( the ) <b>salmon</b> .	* =			* solid
In <b>later times</b> , herring becomes the <b>poor man's</b> salmon.	* tilbehør / garniture til ngt.			* laks
	* i senere perioder			* fattigmands

<b>263</b> When they cook in the kitchen, the water <b>turns to steam</b> .	* blive / omdannes til ngt.	* damp
The heat <b>turns</b> the <b>boiling</b> water <b>to</b> steam.	* omdanne ngt. >	* kogende * til ngt.
<b>Frying</b> and <b>boiling</b> <b>soften</b> vegetables and meat so both	* stegning * kogning	* blødgøre ngt.
<b>are cooked</b> until they <b>soften</b> : get <b>soft</b> and <b>tender</b> enough.	* blive tilberedt * blive blød (-ere) * blød * mør tilberedes	
Milk <b>turns</b> / <b>goes sour</b> as <b>lactoba`cilli</b> <b>turn</b> the milk <b>sour</b> .	* blive sur * mælkesyrebakterier * gøre ngt. >	* sur
<b>Bad food</b> isn't <b>safe</b> to eat and will <b>turn</b> the guests <b>off</b> .	* dårlig * ufarligt * skræmme ng. væk fordærvet	
Any customer will be <b>turned off</b> by the taste of sour milk	* ~ miste lysten	
and <b>mouldy</b> food, and <b>having</b> a <b>reputation for</b> bad food	* muggen	* have ( et ) ry for ngt.
turns ( ) <b>off</b> <b>prospective</b> / <b>possible</b> / <b>potential</b> customers.	* fremtidig = mulig = potentiel	* kunde
<b>10</b> So if any of the <b>foodstuff</b> – meat, <b>fish</b> or vegetables –	* fødemidler	* fisk
is <b>on the turn</b> (E) it will be <b>used</b> for / as <b>livestock feed</b> .	* ikke mere frisk * bruges til / som >	* husdyrføde
The kitchen often <b>turns</b> ( ) <b>(a)round</b> 100 meals a day.	* færdiglave / levere ngt.	
The kitchen may <b>turn</b> ( ) <b>out</b> more than 100 meals a day.	* =	
The dishes on the menu are <b>grouped under</b> four <b>headings</b> .	* gruppere ngt. >	* under > * overskrift
<b>Stew(s)</b> is / ( are ) <b>the jewel in</b> the <b>crown of</b> their cooking.	* gryderet sammenkogt ret	* det bedste af det bedste af ngt.
People can <b>turn up</b> at every hour and get a meal.	* komme dukke op	
The kitchen must be <b>prepared</b> for <b>unexpected</b> guests.	* forberedt på >	* uventet ( gæst )
The novice teaches the dog not to <b>beg</b> which means not	* tigge	
to <b>sit by</b> the tables on its <b>hind legs</b> with its <b>fronts legs</b> /	* sidde ved siden af ( bord )	* bagben * forben
<b>20</b> <b>forelegs</b> in the air waiting to be given food.	* =	
' It's <b>hungry</b> – <b>the poor little thing</b> ,' the guests used to say.	* sulten	* det stakkel lille kræ
They also <b>prepare</b> <b>pharmaceutical remedies</b> from <b>herbal</b>	* tilvirke ngt. > * farmaceutisk * remedie * fra * plante-	
<b>extracts</b> ; pharmaceutical <b>preparations for strengthening</b>	* ekstrakt udtræk	* præparat til at -
the body, <b>preparations</b> both <b>for external</b> and <b>internal</b> use.	* =	* udvortes * ind-
Living at the inn, The Novice has <b>regained</b> her <b>well-being</b> .	* genvinde >	* velbefindende
Not <b>entirely unexpected</b> , The Novice <b>turns heads</b> .	* helt * uventet	* få hovederne til at vende sig ~ gøre ( charmerende / sexuel ) indtryk
She <b>turns</b> men's <b>heads</b> whenever she <b>turns up</b> .	* få ngs. ...	* dukke op
Her looks and <b>pleasant</b> behaviour <b>turn</b> a lot of men <b>on</b> .	* fordrøje ngs. hoved	
It's a <b>`turn-on</b> to see the buxom ex-novice.	* tænde / opildne ng. sexuel	
<b>30</b> She <b>turns on</b> men, but always <b>keeps</b> them <b>at a distance</b> .	* lystvækker	
She a real <b>turn-on</b> , but she always <b>keep</b> her <b>distance</b> ,	* tænde ngs. begær	* holde ng. på afstand
and never <b>returns</b> the <b>stare</b> of a man.	* lystvækker	* holde afstand
The Novice, though, is <b>very sure of</b> her love for Innson,	* gengælde ngs. stirren t	
and Innson <b>returns</b> her love <b>to the full</b> .	* meget sikker på ngt.	
The Novice, he <b>feels sure</b> , would <b>never as much as</b>	* gengælde ngt. til fulde	
think of <b>returning</b> a <b>suggestive invitation</b> .	* føle sig sikker	* aldrig så meget som end ikke
His <b>sweetheart</b> , he <b>feels certain</b> , would never	* gengælde ngt.	* indladende opfordring
<b>let herself in for</b> <b>returning</b> a flirtation.	* hjertenskær	* føle sig sikker på
She never dresses <b>improperly</b> / wears <b>improper</b> clothes.	* indlade sig på at -	* gengælde ngt.
	* upassende	* =

**264 Turning on** their **charm**, some customers

**make ( amorous ) advances to** The Novice.  
`amêrês

Some men are good at **turning it on**.

' **Save your breath,**' the other customers warn them.

' Get me a drink,' a **discourteous / impolite / impertinent**

customer one day **orders** ( The Novice ).

' **I beg your pardon**, you **poor little beggar**, ' The Novice

**retorts**, her **lips set in a pout** of annoyance.  
paut

As the offender keeps **making a pass at** her, The Novice

**10 assumes** an **air of** anger as she **turns (up)on** him,

and tells him **in no uncertain terms** what she thinks of him.

**Making** her annoyance **clear / plain**, she **pouts** ( her **lips** ).

Her lips **pout** as she **pouts** angrily, ' Why can't you **behave** -

**I don't mean to** stand here and listen to such **rubbish**.'

He **will be sorry** – she will **make certain of that**.

She ( certainly ) will **make sure of that**.

Many of the **standing** guests **turn around to face** the scene.

Having **turned** their **chairs around**, many of the **seated /**

**sitting** guests **turn** their **chairs to face this / that way**.

**20** Having **turned** their **heads / faces to face** The Novice,

all the guests have soon **turned** their **gaze towards** her.

As the offender **denies to beg** The Novice's **pardon**, he's

**turned out** with a **turn of phrase very much to the point**.

Knowing how and when to **turn a phrase**, The novice has

a **colourful, apt and incisive turn of phrase**,  
in' saisiv

**apposite to / very appropriate for** the situation.  
`apêzit è`prêupriêt

**In contrast to** the offender, and his methods **opposite to**

her own, she is **considerate** enough not to

**make / poke fun at** him by **making fun of** his **upturned** nose.  
ûp`tê~ned

**30 Being in / having the bad habit of picking a quarrel**,

some people like to **put / stick / get** their **oar in** (E).

The Novice's only **quarrel with** the behaviour of some

customers **is that** her work is **held up / delayed** by their

excessive **clamorous** talking.

So she has to **shout over** the rising **clamour of** voices.

They **ask for** ( her ) **forgiveness** and **lower** their **voices**.

**It's no hardship to** work in the restaurant

if you don't have to **persevere with** difficult guests.  
pê~sî`viê

So troublemakers won't **gain admittance ( to the inn )**.

\* skrue charmen på

\* gøre > \* ( forelskede ) tilnærmelser til ng.

\* skrue charmen på

\* spare sine ord

\* uhøflig

\* beordre ( ng.)

\* må jeg bede mig fri \* stakkels lille noksagt

\* svare skarpt igen \* læber > \* sat i > \* fremskydning

\* gøre tilnærmelser til ng.

\* antage > \* ( vred ) mine \* kaste sig over ng.

\* i utvetydige vendinger

\* gøre ( utilfredshed ) \* klar \* lave trutmund  
~ klart forståelig

\* = \* sige med ( vred ) trutmund \* opføre sig ordentligt

\* ikke til sinds at > \* sludder

\* komme til at fortryde \* sørge for det

\* =

\* vende sig rundt \* for at vende mod ng.

\* dreje / vende ng. rundt \* siddende

\* = \* dreje > \* stol \* for at vende denne / den vej

\* ... hovedet / ansigtet \* for at vende mod ng.

\* rette > \* sin stirren mod ng.

\* bede ng. om undskyld

\* bortvise / smide ng. ud \* rammende

\* formulere sig rammende

\* farverig \* rammende \* skarp \* formuleringsevne  
træffende -sindig

\* træffende / \* passende for > ( situationen )

\* rammende for > \* modsætning til ng. \* modsat ng.

\* hensynsfuld

\* gøre grin med ng. \* ... med ng. \* opadvendt ( næse )  
( opstoppernæse / -tud )

\* have den dårlige vane at - \* starte skænderi  
yppe kiv

\* blande sig i noget uden at være velkommen

\* indvending mod ng.

\* forsinke ng.

\* højrestet

\* overdøve ng. \* kæften op / højrestet larm af ng.

\* bede om ( ngs. ) > \* tilgivelse \* sænke > \* stemmen

\* det er ikke noget besvær at -

\* ~ holde det ud med ng.

\* få adgang ( til ng. )



## SEWING [ sêuing ]

**265** A **workroom** is used for repairing and **sewing** clothes.

Some of them **good / clever** with their **hands baste, sew,**  
sêu

**knit** and **crochet** among **piles** of **sewing**.

nit `krêu\$ei E/A - \$ei

Using a **pair** of **scissors**, a **needle** and **thread**,

working both as a **cutter** and a **seamstresses** (o-f),

they do all kinds of **cutting, sewing, knitting, and crochet**.

They **sew** all kinds of dresses and other **articles** of **clothing**.

They **cutting** () `out a **dress** of both old and new material.

Carefully **cutting** () `out pieces of cloth **from** both new

**10** and old material, they have cloth **to spare**.

They **tack** pieces of fabric **together with tacks**,

long **loose stitches**, before they **sew** the clothes for good.

**Sewing** and **stiching** all kinds of clothes,

they try to make the stiches small and straight.

**Wearing** a **thimble** on one **finger** to protect it when sewing,

they carefully **sew** ( `up ) all the **seams** of a **piece** of **clothing**.

Having **sewn** the seams **up**, they **hem** the **garment**.

They make **buttonholes** and **sew** buttons **on** ( the garment )

so it's easy to **fasten** (up) / **do up** / **button** (up) a **dress**,

**20** and **unfasten** / **undo** / **button** (up) the **dress**. & page 300

People often want an **inner pocket stitched** (on)to a jacket.

They **take up** the **hem** of any **piece** of **clothing**.

**Sewing seams** and **hems**, turning any **item** of **clothing up**,

they **turn up** coats, **sleeves**, skirts and trousers.

Sleeves and **trouser legs** may have **turn-ups** E/A **cuffs**.

**Peasant's coats** are made of **sackcloth / sacking**

and easy to **turn up**.

A **sack** is used for storing and **carrying** goods.

Clothes of very **poor** quality easily **get** a **tear**.  
teê

**30** Repairing clothes, they often **stitch** () **up** tears.

Poorly sewn **stitching** easily **comes undone**.

They carefully **tuck** the fabric where a dress needs a **tuck**.

Travelling for days, people may **bring** a **change** of **clothing**.

They often **make use of** their **stay** at the inn to have

a piece of clothing **mended**.

If a guest decides to leave the inn the **day after tomorrow**

rather than **tomorrow**, there will be enough time to do the task.

\* syning

\* arbejdsrum / -værelse

\* sy ng.

\* fiks på fingrene \* ri, rimpe \* sy

\* strikke \* hækle \* bunke, stabel \* sytøj

\* saks \* nål \* tråd

\* tilskærer \* sypige

\* tilskæring \* syning \* strikning \* hækling  
hæklearbejde

\* beklædningsartikel  
/ -genstand

\* klippe ng. ud / tilskære ng. > \* klædning \* af ng.

\* ... fra ng.

\* i overskud, til overs

\* ri / rimpe ng. sammen \* med > \* ri- / rimpe

\* løs \* sting \* sy ng.

\* sy ng. \* sy ng.

\*

\* have ng. \* fingerbøl \* på fingeren

\* sy ng. sammen \* søm \* klædningsstykke

\* = \* kante \* =

\* knaphuller \* sy ng. på ( ng. )

\* lukke > \* = > \* knappe > \* klædning

\* løsne > \* = > \* knappe ng. op \* =

\* sy ng. på ng. \* inder- \* lomme

\* lægge > \* sømkant \* op på > \* beklædnings-  
genstand

\* sy > \* søm \* kant \* lægge ng. op \* =

\* = \* ærme

\* bukse- \* ben \* opslag

\* kofte \* sækkelærred

\* lægge ( klædning ) op

\* sæk \* bære / transportere ( varer )

\* dårlig, ringe \* få > \* flænge

\* sy ( flænge ) sammen

\* syning ( af sting ) \* gå op

\* lave > \* fold, læg

\* medbringe ng. \* skifte- \* tøj

\* gøre brug af / benytte ng. \* ophold

\* reparere ng.

\* ~ i overmorgen

\* i morgen

**266** In their **spare time**, members of the collective often

**sit knitting** or **crocheting**.

`krêu\$eiting

Using a pair of **knitting needles** of various siezes,

they **knit** all kinds of **knitware**, and, using a single

**crochet hook**, they **crochet** all kinds of **crochet work**.

**Poor light** makes it difficult to work.

Before starting knitting, the **knitter casts on**.

**Casting** the first **row** of **stiches** on the **knitting needle**,

she **casts on** a number of **stiches**.

**Purl** and **plain** ( **knit** ) are the main **stitch(es)** in knitting.

**10** If a knitter **drops a stich**, it may be difficult to **take up**

the **dropped** stich.

Once in a while The Novice **puts** ( ) **down** her **knitting**.

She **knits** sweaters, **socks** and other **knitwear**.

As winter **knit(s)**, she has **knitted** Innson a sweater.

**Knitting** and **purling**, she **knits** one row and **purls** two.

She **turns** a **knitted** sweater **inside out** when **hemming** it.

She has **crocheted** a **shawl** for herself.

The collective produce **plenty of** / an **abundance of** /

a **plenitude of** products and as they usually produce

**20** commodities **in abundance** / **in plenty**, they sell

their surplus products from a market **booth** or market **stall**.

A **market** is **held** at the **marketplace** / **market square**

in town **on market days**, Tuesday and Friday.

There's an **abundant** / a **plentiful supply** of commodities

**at the market** where the **market traders group together**

to sell their **farm produce** and other commodities.

`prâdju-s

One day, The Novice's **eyes** / **gaze** / **glanze fall(s)** on

a lovely **necklace**.

**Unhesitatingly**, she **puts** her dream of such (a) **luxury** /

**30** (an) **extravagance out of** her **head**.

Her **heart misses** / **skips** a **beat** when, in the evening,

{ the necklace on her pillow **leaps out at** her //

the **sight** of the necklace on her pillow **leaps to** her **eyes**.

Having cast an eye at Innson, who's **heart leaps**

**in eager** / **intent expectation**, she **flushes**, and her **eyes fall**

**briefly** / **momentarily** / **for a** ( **brief** ) **moment** /

before she **throws** / **flings** her **arms round** his neck.

**Anxious for** her happiness, Innson is **anxious to** please her.

\* i ledige stunder

\* ~ sidde og -

\* strikke

\* hækle

\* strikkepind

\* <<

\* strikvare

\* hækle- \* ( krog) ~ nål

\* hækle >

\* hæklearbejde

\* dårligt lys, ringe belysning

\* strikkende person

\* slå masker op

\* slå ( den første række af ) masker op

\* ( på strikke-  
pinden )

\* ... X masker op

\* vrang

\* ret (-strikk)

\* maskemønster

\* tabe en maske

\* samle en maske op

\* tabt

\* lægge ngt. fra sig

\* strikketøj

\* strikke ngt.

\* sok

\* strikvarer

\* strik

\* strikke ng. ngt.

\* strikke ret

\* ... vrang

\* strikke en ret

\* ... en vrang

\* vende ngt. på vrangen

\* strikket

\* sømme ngt.

\* hækle ngt.

\* sjal

\* massevis / en overflod af ngt.

\* =

\* i rigelig mængde  
i overflod

\* bod, stand

\* stand, bod

indelukke

indelukke

\* holde marked

\* markedsplads

\* markedsdag

\* rigelig / overdådig

\* forsyning

\* på markedet

\* markedshandler

\* samles i en gruppe

\* landbrugs-

\* produkter

\* ngs. øjne / blik >

\* falde på ngt.

\* halskæde

\* ufortøvet

\* slå ngt. >

\* luksus  
luxusgenstand

\* ekstravagance

\* ud af hovedet

\* springe et slag over

\* springe ng. i øjnene

\* synet af ngt.

\* springe ng. i øjnene

\* hjertet

\* hoppe ( i livet )

\* i spændt forventning

\* rødme

\* ngs. blik sænkes

\* kortvarigt, et øjeblik

\* kaste armene / sig om halsen på ng.

\* ~ håbefuld overfor ngt.

\* ivrig efter at -

## FARMING

<b>267</b> During the autumn and spring they <b>prepare</b> the <b>soil</b>	* kultivere >	* jord
to make the plants <b>flourish / thrive</b> in the <b>rich soil</b> .	* trives	( jordskorpens øverste lag ) * =
In the <b>fall</b> (eA), the plough <b>turns</b> the soil, <b>rich</b> in <b>nutrients</b> .	* efterår	* vende ngt. * rig på > * næringsstof
Soil, <b>poor in nutrients</b> <b>hem / hedge</b> the farm <b>in</b> on all sides.	* fattig på ngt.	* næringsstof * omslutte ngt.
The farm is <b>hemmed / hedged in</b> by <b>poor</b> soil,	* omgivet af ngt.	* mager ufrugtbar
so they seek new ways of farming in order to improve	*	
<b>crop yield(s)</b> as well as <b>milk</b> and <b>meat yield(s)</b> .	* høstudbytte	* mælke- * kød- * udbytte
Animal and human <b>waste</b> ( <b>matter</b> ) is used as <b>fertilizer</b> .	* fordøjelsesaffald ( afføring & urin )	* gødning
<b>Return(s)</b> from crops and livestock soon improve(s).	* udbytte fra ngt.	
<b>10</b> By <b>sparing</b> land for <b>gardening</b> , and <b>hedging</b> a piece of	* afse ngt. til > * havebrug * hegne ngt. ind med hæk	
land, they <b>turn</b> some land <b>over to</b> a <b>neat kitchen garden</b>	* omlægge ngt. til ngt. * velplejet * køkken- * have	
A <b>hedge</b> will <b>shelter</b> the <b>vegetable garden</b> from the wind.	* hæk * beskytte > * ( grønsags - ) * ~ mod ngt.	
Every morning they <b>turn</b> the cows ( <b>loose</b> ) into the fields.	* drive ( dyrerne ) ud på ( markerne ) ( slippe ( dyrerne ) løs på ( markerne )	
The <b>mad bull</b> doesn't like newcomers so at first The Novice	* galsindet	* tyr
keeps a <b>safe distance</b> from the bull <b>fuming with rage</b> .	* sikker afstand fra ngt. * ose af > * raseri	
<b>Watching at / from a safe distance</b> , she <b>keeps</b>	* kigge ( på ) * på / fra sikker afstand * holde sig >	
<b>a safe distance</b> when Innson nears the bull <b>in the field</b> .	* på ...	* i / på marken
One of the <b>following days</b> , <b>speaking to</b> the <b>angry</b> bull	* følgende > * dage * tale til > * rasende ( tyr )	
in a calm, <b>assured</b> voice, The Novice manages	* selvsikker	
<b>20</b> to <b>calm</b> ( <b>down</b> ) the <b>raging</b> bull, <b>foaming at the mouth</b> .	* berolige ng. * rasende * skummende * ved munden	
Eventually, she nears the bull in a calm <b>assured</b> manner.	* selvsikker	
There is an air of easy <b>assurance</b> and <b>calm</b> about her	* selvsikkerhed	* ro
when she speaks to the bull in a calm and <b>self-assured</b> voice.	* selvsikker	
The calm <b>assurance</b> with which she nears the bull	* -hed	
totally <b>diverts / distracts</b> its <b>urge</b> to <b>butt</b> and <b>gore</b> her.	* aflede > * trang til at > * støde / * stange og	
Relying on the bull's <b>trusting</b> attitude, she <b>resolutely</b> starts	* tillidsfuld	* stange ng. maltraktere ng. * resolut
to <b>stroke</b> it in a calm and <b>self-assured</b> manner.	* stryge / klappe	* beslutsomt
She <b>has</b> that <b>indefinable something</b> that makes her	* kærtegne ng.	* selvsikker
<b>trustworthy</b> in contact with an animal.	* have >	* det udefinerbare noget
<b>30</b> The Novice is most <b>assuredly in favour with</b> the bull,	* pålidelig	
so her attempts to near the <b>trustful</b> bull will <b>assuredly</b> not fail.	* sikkert	* vellidt / populær hos ng.
The calm <b>self-assurance</b> with which she handles the bull	* tillidsfuld	* helt sikkert
allows her to <b>earn the trust of</b> the bull, and <b>manage</b> it.	* selvsikkerhed	
Despite her repeated <b>assurances</b> , Innson still looks wor>	* vinde ngs. tillid	* håndtere ( dyr )
ried when The Novice <b>assures</b> him <b>of</b> the bull's <b>trust</b> in her.	* forsikringer	
One morning a couple of sheep are missing as they must	* forsikre ng. om ngt.	* tillid til ng.
have <b>insinuated themselves out</b> of the <b>pen / fold</b> .	*	
A reward is offered for the <b>safe return</b> of animals.	* få møvet sig ud af ( et sted )	* fold / fåre -
	* tilbagebringelse / -venden	<b>** see page 1128 !</b>

**268** When the business is busy, its important that no one  
or any **disturbance holds** () `up any job or anyone.

Depending on the **busyness**, The Novice may ask  
a **working group** if they can **spare** somebody or something.

Depending on the **pressure of work**, she may ask a group  
if they can **spare** someone or something ( **for** her ) & /  
( **for** a pressing / an urgent job ).

People may be asked if they can **spare** a tool **for** someone,  
or if they can **spare** someone **for** somebody in the kitchen,  
**10** e.g. **spare** a person **for** cooking, or **spare** him or her  
**to do / wash** the **dishes** /E& **wash up**.

Having **washed** () **up** everything, they **neaten** the kitchen.

Sometimes people are too busy to **spare** anyone **to** help.

Some customers never **spare a thought for** the person  
who has to clean / clear up after them.

Busy working to **hold** () `back, **check**, **curb** or **restrain**  
a possible `shortfall in **supplies**, Innson is asked if he could  
**spare** some time; if he could possibly **spare** The Novice  
a few moments **in private**.

**20** Innson **doesn't mind** the **slightest**.

**Surely**, Innson can **spare** the **apple of** his **eye** as much  
of his time as she needs.

' Could you take me town ? ' she asks one day.

' **Consider it done**,' Innson responds as usual.

Having already **turned** most matters and problems **over to**  
Innson, the old innkeeper now wants to **turn over to** his son  
the whole business and all responsibilities.

Innson and his father prepare to **sew** () `up a deal.

Having **stitched** () **up** E/A **stitched** () **together** a deal,

**30** they agree that they have **sewn / sewed** a fair deal **up**.

As none of them would ever **walk out on** the deal  
the problems and the business are **in safe hands**;  
they are **in the safe hands of** Innson and The Novice.

Once in a while there is a **delay** / a `hold-up in receiving  
or delivering their goods.

Clever planning saves / spares them from  
odd **delays** and **hold-ups in** dealing with goods.

Fortunately they have never **been** the **victim of** a `hold-up.

The inn and the staff have never been **held** `up.

\*

\* forstyrrelse \* opholde / standse / forsinke ngt. / ng.

\* travlhed

\* arbejdsgruppe \* undvære ng. / ngt.

\* ~ arbejdspress

\* afse / undvære ng. / ngt. ( til ng.)

\* ( til ngt.)

\* afse / undvære ngt. til ng.

\* ... ng. til ng.

\* ... ng. til ngt. \* ... ng. >

\* til at - \* ~ vaske op \* ~ gøre ngt. rent og pænt  
tage opvasken

\*

\* afse / undvære ng. til at -

\* ofre ng. en tanke

\*

\* stoppe ngt. \* & begrænse \* begrænse \* =

\* underskud \* forsyninger  
mangel forråd

\* afse ngt. \* afse til ng. ngt.

\* ~ i enrum

\* ikke have det mindste imod det

\* sikkert og vist \* afse ng. ngt. \* øjesten

\*

\*

\* betragt det, som gjort  
~ helt bestemt

\* overdrage ngt. til ng.

\* =

\*

\* ~ strikke ngt. sammen

\* =

\* =

\* løbe fra / trække sig ud af ngt.

\* i trygge hænder

\* =

\* ... forsinkelse / & standsning i at -

\*

\*

\* forsinkelse i ngt. \* & standsning

\* være offer / udsat for >

\* røveri

\* =

A MENTAL / NERVOUS `BREAKDOWN		* nervesammenbrud
269 One night one of the former nuns <b>insinuates herself out</b>	* smyge / snige sig + adv.	
of the house <b>safe in the knowledge that</b> no one else is <b>awake</b> .	* i tryk forvisning om at -	* vågen
Having sneaked out, she <b>gently closes / shuts the door</b> .	* forsigtigt	* lukke ( dør )
Having <b>noiselessly returned</b> the door <b>to</b> its <b>closed</b> position,	* lydløst	* & lukke igen
and let her <b>eyes grow accustomed to the dark</b> ,	* øjne      * ~ vænne sig til ngt.	* mørket
she <b>takes</b> a few <b>uncertain steps</b> forward.	* tage >      * usikker	* skridt
A collective should be a <b>closely / tightly knit</b> community.	* tæt sammenknyttet	
Some people are <b>indefinably knit together</b> .	* udefinerligt	* knyttet sammen
The collective, <b>knit together</b> by commonly held beliefs,	* =	
10 functions as a <b>close(ly)-`knit</b> community.	* tæt sammenknyttet	
Although it usually functions as a <b>tight(ly)-`knit</b> community,	* =	
for <b>certain personal reasons</b> an ex-nun has <b>unobserved</b>	* af bestemte personlige årsager	* ubemærket
<b>kept</b> ( herself ) <b>to herself</b> , and <b>kept</b> her problem <b>to herself</b> .	* holde sig for sig selv	
For some time, and <b>for no obvious reasons</b> , she has felt	* uden indlysende grund	
a <b>return of</b> her old <b>anxiety</b> and an <b>indefinable sadness</b> .	* tilbage-      * bekymring      * udefinerbar      * sorg, tristhed venden af      ængstelse      bedrøvelse	
Her mood has <b>fluctuated</b> from day to day.	* svinge voldsomt	
<b>Hedged with</b> doubt, she has had grave <b>misgivings about</b>	* omsluttet af ngt.	* betænkeligheder / bekymringer ved at -
( revealing ) her state of mind and no one had soon enough	*	
noticed how her behaviour changed <b>indefinably</b> .	* udefinerligt	
20 No one has noticed the <b>return of</b> symptoms of <b>insecurity</b> .	* genkomst af ngt.	* usikkerhed
<b>Afraid of</b> showing <b>unthankfulness</b> , she has <b>unnoticed</b>	* bange for at -      * utaknemmelighed	* ubemærket
<b>shut herself up, burdened by / with</b> self-blame.	* lukke sig inde i sig selv	* tyngtet af ngt.
Despite her <b>misgivings</b> , she decides to leave the house.	* betænkeligheder, bekymringer bange anelser	
She looks around to <b>make sure</b> ( that ) she's alone.	* forvisse sig om at -	
<b>Afraid to</b> be noticed, having <b>taken the final decision</b> ,	* bange for at -      * træffe >      * endelig      * beslutning afgørende	
she waits a moment to <b>make certain</b> ( that ) she's alone,	* forvisse sig om at -	
and to <b>assure</b> herself <b>that</b> she is not being followed.	* =	
She is seen <b>wandering aimlessly around on the outskirts</b>	* flakke forvildet om      * i udkanten > ( uden mål )	
<b>of the town</b> apparently <b>in a depressed state of mind</b> .	* af ngt.      * i >      * nedtrykt      * sindstilstand	
30 <b>Afraid for</b> the <b>poor</b> ex-nun, everybody in the collective	* bekymret for ng.	* stakkels
is <b>afraid for</b> her <b>safety</b> as she is <b>missing</b> for two days.	* ... for ngt.      * sikkerhed      * være forsvundet / savnet	
With a <b>look of mute / silent appeal for a safe return of</b>	* blik af >      * tavs      * appel      * sikker      * tilbagevenden	
the lost woman, but <b>assuming the worst</b> , the members of	* antage det værste	
the collective <b>prepare</b> themselves <b>for</b> bad news.	* forberede sig på ngt.	
As there is no news, they are <b>prepared for the worst</b> .	* forberedt på det værste	
The woman has <b>almost certainly lost</b> her <b>way</b> .	* næsten med sikkerhed	* fare vild
Having <b>abandoned herself to despair</b> ,	* hengive sig til >	* fortvivlelse
she has <b>almost definitely got lost</b> .	* <<	* <<

<b>270</b> It's <b>certainly possible</b> ( that ) the woman has <b>lost</b>	* bestemt >	* muligt at -	* miste >
her <b>sense of location</b> : it's <b>certainly possible</b> .	* stedsans		* =
The collective look for <b>reassurance</b> : <b>reassurance about</b>	* beroligelse		
the <b>lost</b> ex-nun and her whereabouts, and look	* ... vedrørende		* forsvunden
for <b>reassurance that</b> the ex-nun is found <b>safe and well</b> .	* ... om at		* uskadt og i god behold
<b>Seeking assurance</b> ( that ) the ex-nun is found, they ask,	* søge forsikring om at -		
' It's <b>surely</b> a matter of time before she is found, isn't it ?'	* vel da forhåbentlig		
' You may <b>rest assured that</b> we'll do all we can to find her,'	* være forvisset om at -		
Innson <b>assures</b> The Novice.	* forsikre ng.		
<b>10</b> ' You <b>may rest assured</b> ,' he says <b>reassuringly</b> .	* være forvisset		* beroligende
The collective hear rumours, but nothing <b>definite</b> .	* afgørende bestemt		
They listen to the rumours with a sense of <b>misgiving</b> .	* betænkelighed, bekymring bange anelser		
Fortunately, she's found safe and well a couple of days later	*		
<b>just</b> by the gamekeeper in the woods near his house.	* just lige netop		
Apparently she has failed to <b>navigate</b> her <b>way</b> through	* finde vej		
the forest and <b>navigate</b> her <b>way</b> to the gamekeepers cottage.	* =		
The gamekeeper is able to <b>provide reassurance</b> .	* komme med give, levere		* beroligelse
<b>Giving reassurance</b> , the gamekeeper as soon as possible	* =		
<b>gives assurance</b> ( that ) the lost ex-nun is found.	* give forsikring om at -		
<b>20</b> The gamekeeper smiles <b>reassuringly</b> .	* beroligende		
He is happy to <b>give reassurances that</b> the ex-nun is <b>safe</b> .	* ... beroligende forsikring(-er) om at		* i god behold
<b>Reassuring</b> the collective <b>about</b> her state of mind,	* berolige ng.		
he <b>reassures</b> them ( <b>that</b> ) she's feeling much better,	* ... ng. ( med ) at -		
and <b>assures</b> them ( <b>that</b> ) she'll <b>return</b> as soon as possible.	* forsikre ng. at -		* vende tilbage
' She is a <b>lot better</b> , I can <b>reassure</b> you, and looks	* have det meget bedre		* forsikre / berolige ng.
forward to her return, I can <b>assure</b> you,' he says <b>reassuringly</b> .	* forsikre ng.		* beroligende
' She'll be back quite soon,' he <u><b>assures them</b></u>	* forsikre ng.		
with a <b>reassuring</b> smile.	* beroligende		
It's <b>reassuring to</b> know that she is in good hands.	* betryggende at -		
<b>30</b> It's <b>reassuring for</b> them <b>to</b> know she is taken care of.	* ... for ng. at -		
So everybody in the collective is happy when they	*		
<b>receive assurance</b> ( that ) she is not <b>lost or harmed</b> .	* modtage forsikring om at -		* & i god behold
<b>Having a relapse</b> , she needs to <b>rest</b> – she needs a <b>rest</b>	* få et tilbagefald	* hvile sig	* hvil
of a couple of days before she <b>returns to</b> the collective.	* vende tilbage til ng.		
There are tears and <b>embraces</b> as she returns home.	* omfavnelser		
<b>It would be improper</b> ( <b>of</b> anyone ) /	* det ville være > * upassende / utilstadeligt ( af ng. ) >		
<b>inappropriate</b> ( <b>for</b> anyone ) <b>to</b> intrude on her,	* ... upassende / utilstadeligt ( af ng. ) at -		
and question her about the <b>motive for</b> her <b>disappearance</b>	* forsvinden	* motiv / bevæggrund for ng.	
before she's fully <b>recovered</b> , and <b>mentally</b> ready.	* være kommet sig	* mentalt / psykisk ( parat )	

271 Having returned home **safe and sound**,

the **returned** nun knows that some people think ( that )

she did it **deliberately** as a `surefire way of getting attention,

but she **assures** them ( that ) she didn't.

**No doubt** she's been a **martyr to** mental illness.

The Novice tries to **define** the **term** 'depression'.

Celebrating the ex-nun's **safe return home**, all members  
of the collective **assure** the **returned** ex-nun **of** their support.

Everybody's care for her **augments** her confidence.

**10 A stitch in time ( saves nine ) !** – so they all **pledge** /  
**give a pledge** ( that ) they will be more **alert to** symptoms  
of **emotional distress**.

They **pledge / give a pledge to be on ( the ) alert for**  
symptoms of worry, unhappiness and great suffering.

It's **remarkable that** nobody had noticed anything so they  
**pledge** themselves and each other **to alertness / to be alert**.

**No doubt** they will **honour** their **pledge to be on** the alert.

The novice **turns** 23 in June.

It has been a difficult time since **the turn of the year**, but

**20** despite their worries **things turned out** fine / well / all right.

Some days a decline in business leaves the inn with

**spare capacity**.

**At rare intervals** Innson and The Novice may then spend  
a couple of **spare hours** taking a walk.

Other days they don't have a **spare moment**.

Once in a while, they'd like to **take / have a break**,  
but when they are busy they can't **spare the time**.

**Giving** Innson a **playful cuff** in the morning, The Novice  
**humorously** asks, ' How about **getting up** and **get dressed**,  
**30** you **lucky, lazy beggar** ? '

' **I beg your pardon**, you **cheeky beggar**, ' Innson replies,  
**cuffing** her **playfully** on the side of the head.

The inn seems to **be / ride on** the **crest of a wave**.

**Riding** the **crest of** The Novice's innovations, which have  
not **gone / passed unnoticed by** the customers, the inn  
is altogether **riding** a / the **wave of** widespread popularity.

The Novice and Innson regard ' The Duck and the Duckling ' \*  
a **jewel** of an inn, **remarkable for** its **versatility**

In the morning, the **rooster** / E& **cock crows**. \* \* ! !

\* sund og rask og i god behold

\* hjemvendt

\* med fortsæt / vilje \* ~ stensikker \* måde at -

\* forsikre / garantere ng. at -

\* ingen tvivl ( om at - ) \* et lidende offer for ( sygdom )

\* definere / bestemme ng. \* udtryk

\* i god behold \* hjem- /  
tilbagevenden

\* forsikre ng. om ng. \* hjem- /  
tilbagevendt

\* forøge ng.

\* et sting i tide sparer megen kvide \* love /  
forpligte sig til at -

\* afgive et løfte om at - \* årvågen /  
på vagt overfor ng.

\* følelsesmæssig \* mistrivsel  
fortvivlelse, sorg

\* love / forpligte sig til at - \* årvågen /  
på vagt overfor ng.

\*

\* bemærkelsesværdigt at -

\* forpligte sig selv / ng. > \* årvågenhed \* til ( at ) ng.

\* ingen tvivl ( om at- ) \* honorere /  
opfylde > \* løfte om at -

\* blive x ( år )

\* årets afslutning / begyndelse

\* udvikle sig + adj.

\*

\* ekstra kapacitet

\* en sjælden gang imellem

\* fritimer

\* øjeblik til overs

\* tage / holde en pause

\* undvære / afse tiden dertil

\* give ng. > \* legesyg \* puf med hånden  
spøgefuld

\* humoristisk \* stå op \* blive klædt på

\* heldige, dovne asen

\* må jer bede \* flabet, uforskammet \* tigger  
~ frække asen

\* puffe ng. \* spøgefuldt  
( legesygt )

\* være / ride på toppen at en bølge  
~ være på toppen / ride på en bølge af succes

\* ride på succeen fra ng.

\* gå / passere ubenærket hen overfor ng.

\* =

\* ~ pragteksemplar af ng. \* bemærkelses- \* alsidighed  
værdig for ng.

\* hane \* gale \* \* Se side 300 !

## A THEFT

### 272 Some guests **play dice**.

When it's his **turn** each player **rolls the dice**.

He **throws the dice** when it's his **go**.

One day a **valuable** coin has disappeared.

The **victim of the theft goes spare** (E).

An investigation **turns** () **up** some evidence.

People who are drunk often **speak out of turn**.

A drunk **does** his friend a **bad turn** by **talking out of turn**.

So his **spare** friend is **suspected of theft**.

### 10 He is **suspected of stealing** and having **stolen** the coin.

As he **suspiciously turns** his chair to **face** the **other way**,

The Novice, **in turn, assumes** / **presumes** him **to be** the thief.

**Assuming** / **presuming** him **to have** ( hidden ) the coin

she makes him **turn** () **out** all his pockets

– but the missing coin doesn't **turn up**.

A search **turns** () **up** new traces so when The Novice makes

another **suspect turn** () **out** his purse, the coin **turns up**.  
`sûspekt

The coin **certainly** / **definitely** does not belong to this purse.

**Exclaiming in indignation at** / **about** / **over** the accusation,

### 20 the second suspect **exclaims that** he's innocent.

**Quivering with indignation that** he's accused of theft,

he tries to **avert suspicion** and **save** his **`skin / neck / bacon**.

**Making** () **up a story**, he tries to **save** his **own skin** by lying,  
...`...

and **blaming** the theft **on** the first one.

He tries to **save** his **own** **`neck** by trying to **shift the blame**.

He tries to **lay / put / pin the blame on** the first suspect;

he tries to **lay / put / pin the blame for** the theft **on** him.

It's no use him trying to **shift the blame**,

as the **stolen** coin was found in his purse.

### 30 Being ( **self-**) **opinionated**, he **perseveres in** his attempt pê~si`viêz to **save** his **own bacon** but he **doesn't have a prayer**.

As he **doesn't have a prayer of** saving his own bacon,

and is ( **be>**) **fuddled by** drink, The Novice tells him

to **save** his **breath** and stop **hedging**.

Very few people **has** a **reputation without** a **blemish**

but he has numerous **blemishes on** his **record**,

and The Novice knows him to be **unreliable**.

His **only saving** **`grace** is his sense of humour.

\* tyveri

\* spille terninger

rafle

\* tur

\* slå

\* slå

\* tur

\* værdifuld

\* ofret for ng.

\* tyveri

\* blive bekymret / gal

( ~ den bestjålne )

\* fremdrage ng.

\* tale over sig

\* gøre ng. en dårlig tjeneste

\* =

/ bjørnetjeneste

\* høj og tynd

\* mistænke ng. for ng.

\* ... for at -

\* stjæle

\* ... ng.

\* mistænkeligt \* dreje / vende ng. \* se den anden vej

\* antage / formode at ng. er ng.

\* ... har ( gjort ) ng.

\* som følge heraf

\* vende vrangen ud på ng.

\* dukke op

\* fremdrage ng.

\* vende vrangen ud på ng.

\* dukke op

\* bestemt

helt sikkert

\* bryde ud

\* i indignation / forargelse over ng.

ytte sig højlydt

\* bedyre / udbryde / ytre at -

\* skælte af >

\* indignation / forargelse over at -

\* af- / bortlede >

\* mistanke

\* redde skindet / sit skind

\* ~ finde på en historie

\* redde / hytte sit ( eget ) skind

\* lægge skylden for ng. på ng

\* <<

\* skyde skylden fra sig

\* lægge skylden på ng.

\* ... for ng. på ng.

\* skyde skylden fra sig

\* stjålen

\* påståelig

\* holde på / fremture i ( forsøg )

\* ~ redde / hytte sit ( eget ) skind

\* ~ ikke have  
en chance

\* ... for at -

\* beruset af druk

\* spare sin ord

\* omgive sig med undvigende svar

\* have >

\* ( et ) ry / omdømme

\* uden

\* skamplet

~ uplettet - - -

\* plet

\* på ngs. renomme

\* upålidelig, utroværdig

\* ~ eneste formildnende egenskab.



**273** The Novice strongly **suspects** the second suspect.

She **suspects** ( **that** ) he **stole** the coin.

She **suspects** it, but doesn't **know for a certainty**.

No one **knows for sure** what really happened,

and no one **knows for certain** who **whipped** (E) the coin.

So The Novice can't **say for sure** what happened

or **say for certain** who stole the coin, where, when and how.

She's not **sure** – she can't say **for definite**.

**One thing's** ( **for** ) **sure**, a coin has been stolen,

**10** and **one thing's certain**, one of the suspects is a **thief**.

So the **only certainty is that** one of the suspects is a liar.

Besides that there are **no certainties**.

**It is certain that** one of them is lying –

it ( this / that ? ) **is certain**. ( **don't say !! it is sure !!** )

One of them is a liar, **that's for sure** – **that's for certain**.

One of them is lying; she's **sure of it** – she is **certain of it**.

She is **sure about it**.

She is **certain about** it although there are some facts

she is **not sure of**, and some facts she's **not sure about**.

**20** There are some facts she's **not certain of**,

and some facts she's **not certain about**.

Unfortunately there are some facts she's **uncertain of**

and some **scraps of information** she's **uncertain about**.

She's **unsure of** a few important facts,

and **unsure about** some **unreliable** information.

So who's the thief she doesn't **know with certainty**.

She doesn't **know for a certainty**.

She is not surprised by their **preparedness to lie**

but **it is uncertain who** is lying in this case.

**30** The Novice is **not certain who** to believe.

She is **uncertain** ( **about** ) **who** to trust.

She is **not sure who** is a liar.

She is **unsure who** to **distrust / mistrust**,  
- `trúst

and **unsure of / as to who** stole the coin.

As she **looks at / on** both of them **with distrust / mistrust**,

her **distrust / mistrust of** their **honesty** as well as

her **distrust / mistrust of** either of them upset both of them.

Long ago, the inn was a **den of thieves / a robbers' den /**

**a thieves' kitchen – not that it matters**.

\* mistænke ng.

\* have en anelse  
/ mistanke om at -

\* stjal ngt.

\* ... om det

\* vide med sikkerhed

\* vide med sikkerhed hvxx -

\* = \* hugge / snuppe / stjæle ngt.

\* sige med sikkerhed hvxx

\* =

\* afgjort, med bestemthed

\* en ting er sikkert

\* =

\* det eneste der er sikkert er at -

\* der er intet, der er helt sikkert

\* helt sikkert

\* =

\* =

\* sikker på det

\* =

\* =

\* ikke sikker på ngt.

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* usikker på ngt.

\* stump ( af ) > \* information \* ... omkring ngt.

\* ... på ngt.

\* ... omkring / vedrørende

\* utroværdig  
upålidelig

\* vide

\* med sikkerhed

\* =

\* beredthed til at -

\* ... usikkert hvem

\* ikke sikker på hvem

\* usikker på hvem

\* ikke sikker på hvem

\* usikker på hvem

\* mistro ng.

\* =

\* se på ng. / betragte ( bedømme ) ng. \* med mistro

\* ngs. mistro til ngt.

\* ærlighed

\* ... til ng.

\* hule ⇔ \* tyve-

\* røver- \* hule

~ røverhule / -kule / -rede

\* tyves ( = ) \* køkken \* ikke at det betyder ngt.

**274 It's uncertain what** was going on.

She is **not sure what** really happened

She is **unsure ( of / as to ) what** was going on.

She is **not certain what** the next move should be.

She is **uncertain ( about ) what** to do.

**It's uncertain where** and **when** the theft took place

She is **not sure where** the theft was going on.

She is **unsure ( of / as to ) where** ....

She is not **certain when** it took place.

**10** She is **uncertain ( about )** when ...

**It's uncertain how** the theft was committed.

She has **come across / has met / is facing a problem**,  
and is **not sure how** the problem should be **handled**.

She is **unsure ( of / as to ) how** to tackle it.

She is **not certain how** the **problem** should be **solved**.

She is **uncertain ( about ) how** to **expose / reveal / solve**  
the **crime**.

**It's uncertain whether** the theft can be **unravalled**.

As she is **not sure whether** the theft can be **cleared ( ) up**.

**20** she is **unsure whether** the thief can **be found out**.

She is **not certain whether** he can be **exposed as** a thief,  
and **uncertain whether** she should call Innson.

**It's uncertain if** any of the parties involved are **amenable**.  
ê mi-nêbl

She is **not sure if** they are amenable.

She is **unsure if** they are **amenable to** reason.

She is **not certain if** they are **amenable to** blame.

She is **uncertain if** they are amenable at all.

Having **knit** her **brow(s)** and **wrinkled** (up) her **nose**,  
brau(z)  
The Novice now **wrinkles** (up) / **pucker** (up) her **forehead**.

**30** Her **brow / forehead { puckers** (up) / **wrinkles** (up).

Both suspects used to be **amenable** children.

In fact, both of them are men of **uncertain** temper,  
and none of them are **entirely blameless in** this matter.

One of the suspects now tries to **stitch** the other one **up**.

**Stitching up** one of **your own people**,

and trying to **shift the blame onto** them is considered

**blameworthy** conduct even among **bounders, scoundrels**,  
`bleimwê-gi  
**villains** and **miscreants**.

It's time somebody told them a few **home truths**.

\* det er usikkert hvad -

\* ikke sikker på hvad -

\* usikker på / ( med hensyn til ) ...

\* ikke sikker på ...

\* usikker på ...

\* det er usikkert hvor og hvornår

\* ikke sikker på ...

\* usikker på / ( med hensyn til ) ...

\* ikke sikker på ...

\* usikker på / ( med hensyn til ) ...

\* det er usikkert hvorledes

\* stødt på / mødt / stå overfor > \* problem

\* ikke sikker på hvordan / \* ( problem ) håndteret  
hvorledes >

\* usikker på / ( med hensyn til ) ... \* takle ( problem )

\* sikker på ... \* løse > \* problem

\* usikker på ... \* opklare >

\* forbrydelse

\* det er usikkert om - \* opklare ( tyveri )

\* ikke sikker på om \* =

\* usikker på ... \* afsløre

\* ikke sikker på ... \* =

\* usikker på ...

\* det er usikkert om - \* medgørlig  
følgelig

\* ikke sikker på om -

\* usikker på om - \* modtagelig for /  
lydhør overfor ngt.

\* ikke sikker på ... \* =

\* usikker på ...

\* ~ rynke panden ( brynene ) \* ~ rynke på næsen  
( være tankefuld / gal etc. ) ( være utilfreds )  
\* rynke > \* panden

\* ngs. pande > \* rynker

\* medgørlig

\* usikker

\* helt og aldeles \* uskyldig i ngt.

\* rette falsk anklage  
/ lave falske beviser mod ng.

\* = \* sine egne

\* skyde skylden over på

\* moralsk angribelig \* skurk, kæltring \* =  
dadelværdig slyngel

\* = \* misdæder

\* ~ sandheder om ng. selv

**275** The Novice **knows with absolute certainty** that one of the suspects is lying but is **unsure how to apportion blame**.

She is **uncertain how to apportion blame between** them.

There is one **sure way of** finding out who's lying.

There is one **sure way to** find out.

There is one **sure way of** finding out it, and that is to **play** one ( party / suspect ) **off against** E/A **off** the other.

One **sure way to** do it is to offer the suspects free drinks, and **play** the suspects **off against** E/A **off** each other.

**10** Is the **plan** going to **succeed** ? **Sure thing**.

**It's a certainty**. Is it ? **Sure bet**.

**It's a certainty that** it will succeed

**There's all certainty that** it will; it will **for a certainty**.

It will **for a moral certainty**.

As both of the **abandoned rascals** are **certain to** get drunk both of the **scoundrels** are **sure to** say something stupid.

To **say too much** is a **sure sign of** drunkenness.

It's (as) **sure as eggs is eggs**; it's **as sure as fate**.

( The **set phrases** above are also called **idioms**. )

**20** **Letting your tongue run away with you**, together with **slips of the tongue** are **sure indications of intoxication**.

The **certainty of revelation is clear to** The Novice.

The **certainty of betraying oneself / giving oneself away** is **ousted** in some people's drunken mind by their urge to **hold their own against** a rival in a piece of **bragging**.

**There's all certainty that** one of them will eventually **let the cat out of the bag** as, in their state, they are not at all **prepared for** The Novice's **catchy / tricky questions**.

**Sure enough**, the **culprit** finally **gives** himself **away**.

**30** Having been fooled slowly **penetrates** his thick **skull**.

A **rogue** risks **being hoist** (<ed) **by / with** his **own petard**.  
pê tɑ̃~d

The Novice **arranges for** the **return** of the **stolen** coin to its **rightful owner**.

To **save** them **from** themselves, Innson has to separate the parties, and **turn** the culprit **out** ( **of / from** the inn ).

As the culprit didn't **take** himself **off**, Innson **took** him **off**.

**Managing** drunken people and their drunken behaviour can be difficult, **to be sure**, but they managed to **get at / find out / discover / unveil the truth**.

\* vide > \* med ... sikkerhed

\* usikker med hensyn til whxx - \* fordele > \* skyld

\* = \*

\* sikker måde at -

\* =

\* =

\* spille den ene ( ... ) ud mod den anden

\* sikker måde at -

\* <<

\* plan \* lykkes \* helt sikkert

\* det er helt sikkert \* = ( sikkert væddemål )

\* det er helt sikkert at -

\* = \* helt sikkert

\* til en vished grænsende sandsynlighed \* =

\* ryggesløs \* skurk, slyngel \* sikker på  
lastefuld sluppet \*

\* = \*

\* tale over sig \* sikkert \* tegn på ngt.

\* ( så ) sikkert som to og to er fire \* ... amen i kirken

\* fast > \* udtryk / talemåde \* idiom

\* tale over sig

\* fortalelse \* sikkert \* tegn på > \* fuldskab

\* vished om ngt. \* afsløring \* stå klart for ng.

\* det med sikkerhed at - \* røbe / \* =  
forråde sig selv

\* fordrive  
/ -trænge ngt.

\* hævde sig overfor ng. \* praleri

\* det er helt sikker at -

\* røbe sig / hemmeligheden

\* forberedt på > \* lumske spørgsmål

\* ganske rigtigt \* den skyldige \* afsløre sig selv

\* trænge ind i > \* kranie, ~ knold

\* gavtyv \* blive løftet i vejret af > \* petarde, glds.  
skurk ( glds. ) ~ fanget i sit eget garn / net bombe

\* ~ sørge for > \* tilbagelevering af > stjålen ( mønt )

\* til > \* rette ejermand

\* redde ng. fra hinanden

\* smide ng. ud

\* ~ fjerne sig fra stedet \* fjerne ng. fra stedet

\* håndtere ng. / ngt.

\* helt sikkert, sikkert og vist \* komme frem til >

\* finde ud af / afdække / afsløre > \* sandheden

<b>276 Refused admittance ( to the inn ) and restrained from entering ( it ), simple criminals are warned of being turned in.</b>	* nægte ng. adgang ( til ng.)	* ( for-) hindre ng. i at -
Later on the staff's suspicions <b>return</b> when things start <b>going missing</b> again.	* ( blive ) meldt ( til myndighederne )	
The Novice and Innson lose their <b>forbearance towards second-time offenders</b> – and <b>rightfully so / with justice.</b>	* mistanke	* vende tilbage
They <b>return to</b> the problem – if anyone is <b>caught</b> stealing again they will <b>rightfully turn ( ) in</b> the thief.	* forsvinde	
Some cases are more <b>amenable for / to</b> legal intervention	* overbærenhed overfor ng.	
<b>10</b> so they sometimes <b>turn ( ) over</b> a criminal <b>to the law.</b>	* andengangs	* forbryder
Sometimes a court case <b>turns (up)on</b> a technicality of <b>common law.</b>	* med rette	
A court may <b>declare that</b> a <b>case</b> should be <b>reviewed.</b>	* vende tilbage til ngt.	* fange ng. i færd med / tage ng. i at -
One day Innson <b>restrains</b> a <b>hard-boiled habitual criminal.</b>	* retteligen med rette	* melde ng.
Holding a <b>restraining</b> hand on the <b>scoundrel's</b> arm <b>twisted behind</b> him / his <b>back</b> , Innson manages to <b>check / restrain himself.</b>	* egnet til ngt.	
Managing to <b>curb</b> and <b>restrain</b> his <b>indignation</b> , he manages to <b>check</b> and <b>hold ( ) back</b> his <b>anger</b>	* overgive ng. til ngt.	* ordensmagten
<b>20 Holding back – holding back from meting ( ) out</b> physical <b>punishment to the boulder</b> ,	* afhænge af ngt.	
Innson <b>restrains himself from</b> ( using ) <b>wanton</b> violence as they <b>tie ( ) up</b> the <b>villain.</b>	* domspraksis	
Something <b>holds</b> him <b>back</b> ( from <b>taking</b> the law <b>into his own hands</b> ).	* erklære at -	* sag
Expecting to be turned over to the High Sheriff's men, and be <b>punished for</b> stealing, the <b>tied-up miscreant</b> doesn't <b>refrain from</b> ( uttering ) a <b>stream</b> of <b>abuse.</b>	* tilbageholde ng.	* genoverveje <
The Novice praises Innson for his <b>restrained</b> behaviour;	* hårdkogt koldsindig	* ~ vaneforbryder
<b>30</b> his <b>cool-headed</b> and <b>restrained</b> response to he scoundrel's <b>improper</b> and <b>abusive remarks</b> and <b>language.</b>	* fastholdende	* skurk, slyngel kæltring
Sometimes when a customer can't pay their bill, the customer has to <b>pledge</b> something valuable.	* vride armen om på ng. / ng's arm om på ryggen	
Standing with her <b>hands on</b> her <b>hips</b> , the Novice waits for them to leave ( something valuable as ) a <b>pledge.</b>	* styre sig	
<b>It's improper</b> ( for the customers ) to <b>buy on credit</b> without permission.	* dæmpe >	* forargelse harme
Some customers <b>skip off / out without paying</b> ( their <b>bill</b> ).	* styre / tøjle >	* vrede
It's wise to be <b>prepared</b> for the <b>unexpected.</b>	* holde sig tilbage	* ... fra at -
	* afstraffelse til ng.	* uddele >
	* tøve med at -	* skurk, slyngel kæltring
	* bagbinde ng.	* unødigt
	* holde ng. tilbage ( fra at - )	* skurk
	* i egen hånd	* tage ngt. >
	*	
	* ( blive ) straffet for at -	* bagbunden
	* afholde sig fra ( at - ) ngt.	* misdæder
	* behersket	* ~ hav af >
	* koldsindig	* skældord
	* usømmelig	* behersket
	* fornærmelig	
	* bemærkning	
	* grov	* sprog
	*	
	* pantsætte ngt.	
	* hænderne på >	* hofterne
	* pant	
	* utilstadeligt / umoralsk / ulovligt ( af ng. )	* købe >
	*	* på kredit
	* stikke af >	* uden at betale ( regningen )
	* forberedt på >	* det uventede

## THEATRE

**277** Most towns are a cultural **`desert / wasteland**.

The Novice has **revolved** a short story **in** her **mind**.

The story is **amenable for / to** ( being performed as ) a play.

Innson agrees to **convert / turn** an old **barn into** a theatre.

As there's **ample space**, the barn **turns into** a theatre.

The Novice demands a **restrained decoration**.

She has promised to perform and there's no **turning back**.

Having **made ready / got** everything **ready** ( **for** the play ),

the collective do all they can to **make sure of** success;

**10** they **do** their **best** ( **to make certain of** success )

To **assure wide publicity**, members of the collective

**by turns** walk around in town like a **town crier**, crying,

' See the show and **prepare to be amazed / astonished** !

- **Turn up** early to **be sure of** a ticket -

- **Arrive** early to **be sure of** getting a ticket -

- If you want to **be certain of** a seat, **book in advance** -

- To **be certain of** getting a seat, **book** it in advance ! '

The collective organize excellent **advance publicity**

and **publicity stunts** to **ensures** a high **`turn(-)out**.

**20** A low or poor **turnout** is a **nightmare scenario**.

The play is performed on a Sunday and **attracts / draws**

a **record turnout**; **dozens** of people **turn `out**.

**Scores** of people **turn out to attend** the show.

The collective are surprised by the **turnout**;

they are pleasantly surprised by the **turnout for** the show.

**Young and old** **turn out for** the show.

People who haven't **bought** a ticket **in advance**

ask if anyone got tickets **going spare**.

Otherwise they may hope for a **return**.

**30** Some people arrive at the show **with** a moment to **spare**.

It's hard to **secure** a good seat,

and impossible **save a seat for** someone who is late.

Some young women **sit on** their partners's **lap**.

Hoping she's **sure of** ( knowing ) all her **lines**, The Novice  
hopes she's **certain of** ( knowing ) all her **speeches**.

' I think we can **safely assume that** The Novice will

**turn () in an inspired performance**, ' Innson says, ' I think we

can **safely say** that she will give an **inspiring** performance. '

\* udørken

\* dreje ( ~ novelle ) >

\* i tankerne

~ tumle med ...

\* egnet til ( at ) ngt.

\* omdanne ngt. til ngt.

\* lade

\* rigelig

\* plads

\* omdannes til ngt.

\* behersket >

\* udsmykning

\* ingen vej udenom

\* gjort > \* parat \* gjort ( alt ) > \* parat ( til ngt.)

\* sikre ngt.

\* gøre sit bedste ( for at - )

\* =

\* sikre >

\* bred offentlig omtale

\* på skift

\* offentlig udråber

\* vær forberet på at -

\* ( blive ) forbavset /  
forbløffet

\* =

\* ankomme, møde op  
være der

\* være sikker på ngt.

\* ankom

\* ... at -

\* ( helt ) sikker på ng.

\* bestille

\* i forvejen

\* ... at -

\* ... ngt.

\* forhåndsomtale

\* reklame trick

\* sikre >

\* ( stort ) fremmøde

\* ( lav / elendig ) fremmøde

\* marerids-

\* scenarie

\* tiltrække >

\* rekord stort \* fremmøde \* usynlig af ngt. \* møde op

\* snesevis ngt.

\* ... for at -

\* overvære ngt.

\* fremmøde

\* ... til ngt.

\* unge og gamle

\* møde op til ngt.

\* købe ngt.

\* på forhånd

\* til overs

\* tilbageleveret / uafhængt billet

\* et øjeblik før tid

\* sikre sig ngt.

\* holde en siddeplads til ng.

\* sidde på ngs. skød / på skødet af ng.

\* sikker på ngt.

\* replik

\* =

\* replikker

\* roligt gå ud fra at -

\* levere >

\* inspireret  
beåndet

\* optræden  
forestilling

\* roligt sige at -

\* inspirerende  
tankevækkende

<b>278</b> A <b>cheerful</b> young <b>maid</b> one day meets an old woman.	* munter	* jomfru, mø, ugift kvinde
She promises the young maid a <b>secure destiny</b> if she'll just	* tryg	tjenestepige * skæbne
work at her farm and <b>place</b> her <b>life / fate</b> in her <b>hands</b> ,	* lægge sit liv / sin skæbne i ngs. hænder	
and <b>blindly obey</b> the rules of the farm.	* blindt >	* adlyde ngt.
Little by little <b>taking on / assuming</b> the <b>form of</b> a bird	* antage >	* = > * ngt.s. skikkelse
the naive <b>maiden turns into</b> a <b>sparrow</b> .	* ( skøn-) jomfru, mø ung ugift kvinde	* forvandles til ngt. * spurv
The <b>old maid shuts</b> the poor sparrow <b>up</b> in a small <b>cage</b> .	* gammel kone	* lukke ng. inde * bur
As she feeds her, but only when she sings <b>sad tunes</b> ,	* trist, sørgmodig	* melodi
the <b>witch</b> has true enough provided the young maid	* heks	
<b>10</b> with a <b>secure fate</b> .	* tryg	* skæbne
<b>Cooped up</b> , the poor bird <b>eats no more than</b> a <b>sparrow</b> .	* spærret inde	* spise som en fugl
Everybody who <b>takes a job on</b> the witch's farm	* tage tjeneste på ngt.	* ( bonde-) gård
is <b>turned into</b> a <b>weak-willed</b> animal,	* fortrylle / omskabe ng. om til ngt.	* viljesvag
<b>being at</b> the witch's <b>beck and `call</b> .	* viljeløst redskab i hænderne på / parat til at adlyde ng.	
<b>In the hands of</b> the witch, being a <b>unwitting tool</b> of her,	* i hænderne på ng. * uvidende * redskab for ng.	
all of the animals <b>dance to</b> her <b>pipe</b> .	* i ngs. varetægt * danse efter ngs. pibe	
The animals are all <b>caged (up)</b> at night,	* sætte / spærre ng. inde i bur	
unable to <b>fly the `coop</b> (eA).	* undslippe ( flyve fra kyllingeburet )	
<b>Having a sad look in</b> its <b>eyes</b> , having <b>sad eyes</b> ,	* have > * sørgmodigt, trist * blik i øjnene * ... øjne	
<b>20</b> the sparrow sings with such <b>ravishing</b> sadness	* medrivende	
that one day a strange bird lands on top of the <b>birdcage</b> .	* fugebur	
The <b>caged</b> sparrow <b>does / turns a somersault</b> ,	* slå en kolbøtte vende på en tallerken	
and defying the witch, it starts to <b>sing</b> a <b>cheerful tune</b> .	* synge >	* munter * melodi
In a flash, the male sparrow <b>turns into</b> the Holy Spirit.	* omskabes til ngt.	
It tells the caged sparrow to <b>persevere in</b> singing	* ~ blive ( ihærdigt ) ved med at - ( synge )	
<b>in</b> a cheerful <b>tone</b> , and then disappears.	* i >	* ( munter ) tone
As the sparrow perseveres in singing <b>cheerfully</b> ,	* muntert	
the witch <b>starves</b> the poor sparrow.	* sulte ng.	
But the <b>persevering</b> sparrow <b>comes up trumps</b> .	* vedholdende	* ~ få magt over situationen klare sig bedre end ventet * sidste styrke / kræfter
<b>30</b> <b>Summoning up / exerting</b> her <b>last strength</b> in order to	* opbyde >	
<b>persevere with</b> her singing, she <b>turns up trumps</b> .	* blive ( ihærdigt ) ved med ( sang / syngen )	* <<
As she <b>shows</b> great <b>perseverance</b> , her cheerful singing	* udvise >	* udholdenhed
eventually makes the old maid's <b>witchcraft wither away</b> .	* trolddomskraft	* svinde bort
After times of <b>starvation</b> , the poor sparrow eventually	* sult	
<b>escapes ( from captivity )</b> as the <b>enchanted</b> cage is	* ~ slippe ud * ( af fangeskab )	* forhekset
no longer strong enough to keep her <b>caged (up) / in captivity</b> .	* indespærret	* i fangeskab
Although <b>free as air</b> , the <b>starving</b> sparrow has , however,	* fri som fuglen	* sultende
<b>insuperable</b> difficulties in finding food and shelter.	* uoverstigelig	

279 Once again a strange sparrow **comes up trumps**.

A male sparrow **turns up trumps** by helping the starving

sparrow to a **safe haven**.

Suddenly the spell is broken, and all the animals

**turn into** humans.

**Released from** the spell, all of the animals

**turn cartwheels** and **somersaults**; they **cartwheel**

and **somersault beside** themselves **with joy**.

The play **devastatingly** criticizes the **dogmatic** Church.

10 It **expresses devastating criticism of** the Catholic Church

**whose** dogmas and **dogmatic approach to** life very often

**form a glaring contrast to** **Christian charity** and forgiveness.

It **directs / levels sharp criticism at / against dogmatism**,

and **levels / directs** strong and **harsh criticism at / against**

those **sanctimonious self-righteous hypocrits**, who,

in their **sanctimonious self-righteous** and often **hypocritical**

**self-glorification**, **abuse** their **position** as **arbitrary** leaders

to make **arbitrary decisions** in their own favour.

The Novice looks down at the **sea of upturned faces**.

20 The audience is never **becoming restless**.

Everybody agrees ( that ) the novice **turned in** a **dazzling**

and **stirring performance**.

As everybody agrees it was a **definitive** performance,

and a **source of plentiful inspiration**,

the **appreciative audience applaud(s) with a vengeance**.

The play was neither **safe** nor predictable.

**Sure to** be popular, the show is **certain to** be a success.

Excellent **performance (U)** **all the way assures / ensures**

( both The Novice's and the play's ) success so the play

30 **assures / ensures** both the Novice and the play success.

Success seems **assured / ensured**.

It **seems / is certain** ( that ) there will be many more

performances – **it seems / is certain**.

The Novice **looks certain to win recognition**.

She **looks sure to** be fully **restored to favour**.

She is most **assuredly in favour**.

' **Spare my blushes** ! ' The Novice **comments evasively**,

with a **restrained** smile.

\* komme frem med > \* trumf

~ komme til undsætning / redde situationen

\* - = -

\* sikkert sted  
tilflugtssted

\* forvandles til ngt.

\* befri ng. fra ( en forbandelse )

\* slå vejrmølle \* slå kolbøtte \* =  
/ saltomortale  
\* = \* ude af sig selv \* af glæde

\* sønderlemmende \* dogmatisk  
trossætningsbundet  
\* udtrykke \* = \* kritik af ngt.

\* hvis ngt. \* dogmatisk \* tilgang til ngt.

\* stå i grel modsætning til ngt. \* ~ næstekærlighed

\* rette > \* skarp \* kritik mod > \* dogmatisme

\* ... ng. \* hård \* kritik mod ng.

\* skinhellig \* selvretfærdig \* hykler

\* = \* = \* hyklerisk  
skinhellig

\* selvforherligelse \* misbruge > \* stilling \* egenmægtig  
enerådende  
\* egenhændig \* beslutning

\* et hav af ngt. \* opadvendt \* ansigt

\* blive hvileløs / ~ urolig, ~ kede sig

\* levere > \* blændende

\* betagende, bevægende \* præstation, optræden  
rørende  
\* fuldendt

\* kilde til > \* righoldig \* inspiration

\* taknemmelig \* publikum \* bifalde \* med ekstra /  
fornyset styrke

\* ufarligt

\* sikker på at - \* =

\* udførelse \* hele vejen igennem \* sikre / fastslå >  
optræden  
\* ( ngs. og ngts. ) ngt.

\* sikre ng. ngt.

\* sikret

\* det synes / er sikkert at -

\* =

\* være sikker på at- \* vinde > \* anerkendelse

\* = \* komme til ære og værdighed

\* helt sikkert \* populær

\* skån mig for at rødme \* kommentere \* undvigende  
jeg bliver helt flov  
\* behersket

<b>280</b> As the play is a <b>surefire</b> success, there'll be <b>yet another</b> performance <b>on its return from</b> the neighbouring towns.	* stensikker	* genopgørelse	* endnu en
Considered a <b>dazzle</b> by many people, they look forward to <b>see</b> the play <b>again on its return to</b> the town.	* ved ngts.	* tilbagevenden fra et sted	
The Novice is <b>hailed as</b> the <b>saviour</b> of the inn, and seen by many as the <b>saviour</b> of many <b>festive</b> and culturel traditions.	* blændende / fortumlene oplevelse		
<b>Preparations</b> are well <b>under way for a revival of</b> old plays together with the <b>rival of</b> old traditions.	* se ng. igen & gense ngt.	* << til et sted	
Even if The Novice's religious belief is <b>heged with</b> doubt, the <b>Gospel</b> itself still sends a massage of Christian charity	* hylde ng. som ngt.	* redningsmand	
<b>10</b> so she is certainly <b>prepared to</b> celebrate Christmas. <b>Prepared for</b> all kinds of Christmas <b>preparations</b> , she wants to create a <b>sense of occasion</b> at Christmas.	* =	* festlig	
The Novice is now the <b>idol of</b> many townspeople. It's easy to <b>define what</b> makes her so popular.	* forberedelser * ( godt ) på vej til ng.	* gen- / ny-opførelse af ng.	
The <b>tide</b> has <b>turned</b> ; her <b>stock</b> has turned from <b>low to high</b> . As The Novice's <b>caring</b> and <b>down-to-earth</b> behavior has <b>turned the tide</b> and <b>ensured</b> her success and popularity, the <b>tide of public opinion</b> has <b>turned in favour</b> of her.	* genoplivning / -tagelse		
The <b>difference in</b> The Novice's and the prioress' <b>approach</b> to <b>love of mankind turns</b> the <b>public opinion</b> <b>on its head / upside `down</b> .	* være omgivet / begrænset af ng.		
Most people now <b>have a good opinion of</b> The Novice. <b>Held in</b> great <b>consideration</b> by ordinary people, she is <b>held in</b> high <b>regard</b> by them	* evangeliet		
so most of the community <b>have a high opinion of</b> her. As the <b>tide of popular opinion</b> has <b>turned against</b> the prioress, most people <b>have a low opinion of</b> her.	* parat / villig til at -		
Most people now <b>have a bad opinion of</b> the prioress. At the convent The Novice was quite <b>cagey</b> .	* forberedt på ng.	* forberedelser	
<b>30</b> She was very <b>cagey about</b> her past and her family. For a couple of years, rules and reguations at the convent had totally <b>hemmed / hedged</b> () `in The Novice.	* ~ stemning passende til lejligheden		
Most people now <b>treat</b> The Novice <b>with consideration</b> . If having to <b>embark (up)on // enter into / (up)on</b> a <b>subject</b> that might be painful to her, those who know about her <b>sorry past will get on to / touch (up)on / deal with / discuss</b> the <b>topic with</b> great <b>consideration</b> <b>out of consideration for</b> The Novice and her feelings.	* idol / forbillede for ng. ( blive forgudet af )		
	* tidevandet	* er vendt	* ~ anseelse
	* omsorgsfuld		* høj
	* vende tendensen		* lav
	* =	* den almindelige mening	* vende sig til > fordel for ng.
	* forskellen i ng.		* tilgang ( til ng. )
	* menneske-kærlighed	* vende >	* den offentlige mening
	* på hovedet		
	* have en fordelagtig mening om ng.		
	* være velanset af ng.		
	* =		
	* nære høje tanker om ng.		
	* den almindelige mening		* vende sig imod
	* ~ ikke nære høje tanker om ng.		
	* have en negativ mening om ng.		
	* tillukket		
	* ... omkring		
	*		
	* begrænse / hæmme		
	* lægge snærende bånd på ng.		
	* behandle ng. med >		* hensyntagen respekt
	* tage fat på / komme ind på >		* emne
	*		
	* trist	* fortid	* komme ind på / berøre / behandle >
	* diskutere >	* emne	* med omtanke
	* af hensyn til ng. / ng.		



**281** There are signs of an **upturn** in the economy.

The business is **on the upturn**.

As business is **hedged ( about / around ) with fluctuation**,  
their **banking on / counting on / relying on** a variety of  
business activities is a **hedge against** total loss.

By **hedging against** both a **fluctuating** market,  
and **fluctuations in** prices, they **hedge** their **bets**.

One day, The Novice **flourishes** their latest accounts.

Some problems have **issued from false economies**.

**10** Working at the inn, The Novice has **turned around**  
a badly **performing** business.

She has **slowly but surely turned** the business **round**.

**As things turned out**, the inn has **turned around from**  
losses **to** profit so the **business** seems to **flourish / thrive**.

The **economy** seems to **flourish / thrive**, as there has  
been a **remarkable turn(a)round in** their economy.

The Novice takes care never to **sell at a sacrifice**.

The year before her appearance the **turnover** fell 10 %,  
and the business had a high degree of **staff turnover**.

**20** Low **pay accounted for** the high **turnover of** staff.

As **it turned out**, the inn was able to **turn a profit (A)**.

**Selling at a profit**, the farm **turns in** a satisfactory **profit**.

Within the first year after The Novice's arrival,  
the inn is **turning over twice as much as** the year before.

**Bringing in a good deal of** money, the inn and the farm  
have an **annual turnover of double what** it was last year.

The **turnover** rose more than 100 %.

Due to **secure working conditions** the business has  
a low **turnover of labour / labour turnover**.

**30** The Novice work out **annual plans**, and two-year plans.

She managed to **put** the business **on a secure footing**:  
**place it on a firm / sound financial footing**.

The **future** of the inn **looks secure**.

**Being (all) on their own**, The Novice and Innson never  
just **keep to safe subjects** for discussion like the weather  
as both **are game for / to** have a **wide-ranging** discussion.

They are **open to** any **topic** of discussion,  
and **open about** whatever is **on** their **mind**.

Often the conversation **turns back to** faith and fate.

\* opgang / -sving

\* for opadgående

\* være omgivet / begrænset /  
hæmme af ngt.  
\* satse op ngt.

\* voldsom svingning

\* gardering mod ngt.

\* gardere sig mod ngt.

\* stærkt svingende \* =

\* voldsomme udsving i ngt.

\* gardere sin indats

\* vifte ned ngt. i hånden

\* ( problem ) ~ hidrøre fra > \* ~ uduelige \* økonomier  
( elendige handler )

\* få vendt om på udviklingen af

\* gående  
ydende

\* langsomt men sikkert

\* vende udviklingen af ngt.  
til det bedre  
\* gå fra ngt. >

\* som det skulle vise sig

\* til ngt.

\* forretningen

\* blomstre / trives

\* økonomien

\* blomstre / trives

\* bemærkelsesværdig

\* bedring

\* sælge med tab

\* omsætning i varer / penge

\* arbejdskraft-

\* udskiftning

\* løn

\* forklare ngt.

\* udskiftning af ngt.

\* som det viste sig

\* skabe profit / overskud

\* sælge \* med profit  
/ overskud

\* indtjene / skaffe > \* =

\*

\* omsætte

\* dobbelt så meget som

\* indbringe >

\* en hel del ( penge )

\* årlig

\* omsætning

\* det dobbelte af hvad -

\* <<

\* tryk

\* arbejdsforhold

\* udskiftning

( ⇔ )

\* arbejdskraft

\* årsplan

\* få ngt. på >

\* sikker

\* basis, grundlag  
fundament

\* =

\* fremtiden synes sikker / sikret

\* helt alene / sig selv

\* holde sig til >

\* ufarlig emne

\* parat / villig til ngt. / at -

\* vidtfavnende

\* åben overfor >

\* emne ( ⇔ \* diskussions- )

\* åben med ngt.

\* ~ ng. have i tankerne

\* vende tilbage til ngt.

<b>282</b> As her <b>mind</b> regularly <b>returns</b> to some <b>fateful</b> events,	* vende tilbage til ngt.	* skæbnsvanger
The Novice often <b>returns to</b> these topics.	* vende tilbage til ngt.	
Always <b>showing consideration for</b> her feelings,	* vise hensyn overfor ngt.	
Innson <b>begs to</b> be told the truth.	* ( tigge og ) bede / bønfalde / trygle om at -	
' Don't <b>worry about sparing</b> my <b>feelings</b>	* bekymre sig om at -	* skåne ngs. følelser
but please <b>spare</b> me the details,' Innson <b>prompts</b> ( her ).	* ... ng. ( for ) ngt.	* tilskynde ( ng. )
So The Novice <b>unburdens</b> her <b>heart</b> .	* lette sit hjerte	
ûn`bê-denz <b>True enough</b> The Novice <b>unburdens</b> her <b>heart to</b> Innson	* ... overfor ng.	
but <b>understandably spares</b> him <b>certain of</b> the details.	* forståeligt ( nok ) * spare ng. ( for ) ngt. * bestemte visse	
She <b>unburdens</b> herself but <b>spares</b> herself <b>the pain of</b>	* lette sit hjerte * spare sig selv for > * smerten ved at -	
<b>10 going into detail</b> (U) / <b>giving details about</b> the part of her	* gå i detaljer om ngt.	* give ... om ngt.
past characterized by a <b>train</b> of misfortunes and <b>humiliations</b> .	* række af ngt.	* ydmygelse
So as she <b>unburdens</b> her <b>mind to</b> Innson,	* lette sit sind over for ng.	
she <b>spares</b> him <b>the pain of</b> the <b>gruesome</b> details.	* skåne ng. for smerten ved ngt.	* grusom
She certainly has <b>known</b> great <b>misfortune</b> and <b>humiliation</b> .	* kende til ngt.	* ulykke
' I was raped and lost my faith,' The Novice admits,	*	
feeling her anger <b>returning</b> .	* komme tilbage	
' <b>You poor thing</b> , you've had a hard time of it,' Innson	* din ( arme ) stakkel	
<b>sympathizes</b> as he <b>respects</b> her <b>for</b> her frankness.	* sige medfølelse	* respektere ng. for ngt
' I don't <b>blame you</b> – I don't <b>blame you for</b> losing	* bebrejde ng.	* forsikre ng.
<b>20</b> your faith,' Innson <b>assures</b> her.	* ... for at -	* forsikre / berolige ng.
<b>Returning to</b> her story, The Novice <b>confides</b> her deepest	* vende tilbage til ngt. * betro ngt. > ( ... ng. ngt. )	
<b>fears</b> and <b>insecurities to</b> Innson.	* frygt * usikkerhed * < til ng.	
<b>Filled with anger at</b> the prioress, she <b>confides</b> ( to him )	* fuld af > * vrede mod ng. * betro ( ng. ) >	
<b>that</b> she has suffered from the utmost <b>sense of insecurity</b> .	* at - * følelse af usikkerhed / utryghed	
She'll never forget her <b>feelings of insecurity</b>	* =	
especially when she had <b>incurred</b> the <b>wrath of</b> the prioress	* pådrage sig ngt.	* ngs. vrede
by <b>questioning</b> her divine authority.	* sætte spørgsmålstegn ved / betvivle ngt.	
She <b>shudders to think of</b> it.	* gyse ved tanken om ngt.	
Her secrets are <b>safe</b> ; her secrets are <b>safe with</b> Innson.	* i sikkerhed / holdes fortrolig * ... hos / af ng.	
<b>30</b> The Novice's mother had been <b>abandoned</b> by	* blive forladt / svigtet	
her husband who <b>turned out</b> to be a <b>`cradle-snatcher</b> (E).	* vise sig at være * " vugge- / babyrøver "	
<b>Showing no consideration</b> whatsoever <b>for</b> his family,	* vise ingen ( -somhelst ) hensyn overfor ng.	
this <b>cradle-robber</b> (A) had <b>failed</b> his wife and <b>family</b> ,	* ikke vise nogen ( -somhelst ) ...	
and <b>deserted</b> them <b>for</b> a much younger woman.	* << * svigte ng. * ~ børn	
How could he <b>abandon</b> his family <b>for</b> another woman.	* forlade / svigte ng. til fordel for ng.	
How could he <b>desert</b> his family <b>with`gay abandon</b> ,	* =	
and <b>abandon</b> them <b>to a meagre</b> /eA <b>meager income</b> ,	* = * munter * hæmningsløshed løssluppenhed	
and such an <b>uncertain future</b> .	* efterlade ng. til > * mager * indtægt	
	* usikker fremtid	

283 The Novice's mother has felt <b>betrayed</b> by her husband's	* forråde ng.
<b>abandonment</b> , and her children's minds and fates have been	* flugt, svigt
heavily <b>influenced by</b> their father's <b>desertion</b> .	* flugt, svigt
<b>Abandoned / deserted</b> by her husband, The Novice's	* forlade / svigte ng. * =
mother had <b>reared /eA raised</b> five children <b>single-handed</b> .	* opfostre ng. * egenhændigt, på egen hånd
Ready to <b>beggar</b> herself <b>for</b> her <b>family</b> , she had	* bringe sig til tiggerstaven for > * familie, ~ børn
<b>brought ( ) up</b> her children <b>at</b> a great <b>personal sacrifice</b> .	* opfostre ng. * ~ gennem * personligt * offer
Her children <b>were</b> always <b>on</b> her <b>mind</b> .	* være i ngs. tanker
as she <b>sacrificed</b> herself <b>to spare</b> them any anxiety.	* ofre sig for at - * spare ng. ( for ) ng.
10 Parents who <b>sacrifice</b> themselves <b>for</b> their children	* ... for ng.
<b>deserve</b> great <b>respect ( for</b> their <b>sacrifice / &lt;s )</b>	* fortjene > * respekt ( for ng.) * opopfrelse ofre
Influenced by the Catholic faith <b>from</b> the <b>cradle</b> ,	* helt fra vuggen af
The Novice explains that when she decided to become a nun	*
it had been her <b>definition of</b> the <b>meaning of life</b> .	* opfattelse af ng. * livets mening
She has now <b>turned into</b> a woman with a philosophical	* blive til ng.
independent practical and optimistical <b>turn of `mind</b> .	* tankegang tænkemåde
Innson <b>has respect for</b> everything she <b>holds sacred</b> .	* have respekt for ng. * anse for helligt
The sky <b>turns pink</b> as they one evening <b>take a turn</b> (o-f)	* blive * lyserød * tage en kort spadseretur
around the <b>commom</b> .	* fældet, overdrev
20 The sun <b>turns</b> the sky <b>a glowing pink</b> .	* få ng. til at blive > * glødende * lyserød
The <b>treetops</b> are <b>sharply defined</b> against the sky.	* træptop * skarpt * afgrænset / -tegnet
The novice wears a <b>short-sleeved blouse</b> ,	* kortærmet * bluse
and a light <b>summery skirt</b> .	* sommerlig * skørt, nederdel
The <b>flowers wave</b> in the <b>summery breeze</b> as the couple	* blomst * bølge * sommerlig * brise
walk hand in hand.	*
' It's getting late – let's <b>turn `back</b> ,' Innson <b>advises</b> .	* vende tilbage * tilråde
Knowing the novice has <b>turned down</b> many <b>suitors</b> ,	* afvise ng. * bejler
Innson eventually <b>plucks `up / screws up `courage</b> .	* samle > * mod til sig
30 He <b>musters (up)</b> his <b>courage</b> just before they reach home.	* - = -
<b>Summoning (up)</b> the <b>courage</b> to <b>propose</b> ,	* samle ( sig ) > * mod til at - * fri
he eventually <b>has</b> the <b>courage</b> to <b>propose to</b> her /	* få / have > * modet til at - * ... til ng.
to <b>propose marriage</b> .	* foreslå ægteskab
' I've been waiting for an <b>answer to</b> my <b>prayers</b> .'	* svar på ngs. bønner
Innson begins, ' And you – <b>the apple of my eye</b> –	* min øjesten
<b>the `object of</b> my <b>desire</b> – arrived at the very moment,	* ngs. ønskedrømmes mål
as if an <b>answer to</b> my <b>prayer</b> ,' he goes on.	* ... bøn
' <b>Pray</b> continue,' The Novice <b>prompts</b> (him).	* åh, jeg be'r * tilskynde ng.
' You are <b>the answer to</b> my <b>prayers</b> ,' Innson goes on,	* svar på ngs. bønner
<b>knowing</b> now <b>with</b> absolute <b>certainty that</b> she'll say yes.	* vide med ... sikkerhed

**284** It can **safely be assumed that** she will accept his proposal; it can **safely be said that** she will.

**Safe / secure in the knowledge that** Innson is the **man of** her **dreams**, she would never **turn ( ) down** her **saviour**.

**Secretly** and **deep down**, her **prayer** has always been that she will one day lead a life with husband and children.

**Inwardly**, in her **heart of hearts** that has been her **prayer**.

**Luckily**, her **prayers** are **answered**, as she is going to be

a novice **turned** innkeeper's wife.

**10** She never **felt happier** in her life, and couldn't be more **happy to** say 'yes'.

So she doesn't **hesitate to** give a **definite** answer.

She gives him a **definitive** answer **on the spot**.

Innson knows he has **achieved** his **heart's desire**.

A happy marriage **saves** you **the pain of** loneliness; it **saves** you **the pain of** feeling lonely /eA lonesome.

The couple **decide (up)on** and **set a date for** the wedding.

**Preparations for** the wedding start early so everybody has time to make arrangements and **get ready for** the wedding.

**20** Everybody will have time to **prepare** and **get ready**, and the marrying couple have time to **prepare** themselves.

As the marrying couple **prepare for** the wedding, and **prepare to** get married, they **get ready to** marry.

While they **make preparations for** the wedding and **make preparations to** celebrate, The Novice

and Innson **prepare** themselves **for** the **wedding day**, and **prepare** themselves **to** get married.

Clothes are a **good / safe bet as** a **wedding present**.

Everybody who **has time to spare** would like

**30** to **help** (the couple) **with** the wedding preparations.

So everybody **helps** (them) **in** doing the preparations.

The Novice has **done well, considering**.

The prioress was a **major** and **bitter disappointment** but all **things considered**, she has done well.

She has done well **considering** her past ( experiences ), **considering how** much **adversity** she's **struggled with**, and **considering ( that )** she has **suffered** a lot of **hardship**,

**Considering who** she met, she **counts** herself **lucky** but thinking of her past, luck has **long been overdue**.

\* med sikkerhed antages at -

\* ... siges at -

\* i den faste / sikre overbevisning at - \* mand ⇔

\* drømme- \* afvise > \* frelser  
~ frelsende engel  
\* i ens stille sind \* inderst inde \* bøn  
håb

\* inderst inde \* = \* bøn  
i ens stille sind

\* heldigvis \* bønner \* ~ ( blive ) hørt

\* nu ( bleven til ngt. )

\* føle sig lykkelig

\* ... ( end ) ved at -

\* bestemt, klart  
afgørende, endelig  
\* afgørende \* lige på stedet  
endelig på stående fod

\* få oplydt ( sit ) inderligste ønske

\* spare ng. for smerten ved ngt.

\* =

\* beslutte sig for > \* fastsætte > \* dato

\* forberedelser til ngt.

\* gøre sig parat til ngt.

\* gøre forberedelser \* gøre sig parat

\* forberede sig

\* gøre forberedelser til ngt.

\* ... at - \* gøre sig parat til at -

\* gøre forberedelser til ngt.

\* ... at -

\* forberede sig til at - \* bryllupsdag

berede sig på / til at -

\* ... at -

\* godt / sikkert bud på ngt. \* bryllupsgave

\* have tid til overs

\* hjælpe ( ng. ) med ngt.

\* ... med at gøre ngt.

\* klare sig godt \* i betragtning

\* ( ng. være ) \* vældig > \* bitter > \* skuffelse

\* alt taget i betragtning

\* i betragtning af ngt.

\* ... hvxx \* modgang \* kæmpe med <

\* ... af at - \* genvordighed (-er) \* lide <

\* ... af hvxx \* regne sig for / prise sig lykkelig

\* være alt for længe over rettidighed / om at indtræffe

<b>285</b> Everybody is invited to the wedding, <b>no expence spared</b> .	* ingen udgift sparet ~ hvor der ikke var sparet på noget	
You can be <b>certain of one thing – no expence is spared</b> .	* sikker på >	* en ting * ... er ...
Innson has become <b>comfortly / well off</b> so you can be <b>sure</b>	* velhavende	* være sikker på >
<b>of one thing – there will be festivities, no expence spared.</b>	* en ting	* festlighed
' If you keep spending like this we're going to	*	
<b>end up in the poorhouse,</b> ' The novice warns.	* ende på fattiggården	
It will be an <b>occasion of great festivity</b> , that's <b>for sure</b> .	* festivitas	* sikkert
There is an <b>air of festivity</b> in the village, that's <b>for certain</b> .	* atmosfære / stemning af ...	* helt sikkert
<b>One thing's ( for) sure</b> , the <b>atmosphere</b> is <b>festive</b> and <b>jolly</b> .	* en ting er sikkert * stemning * festlig * munter	
<b>10 One thing is for certain</b> , the wedding guests,	* =	
<b>dressed in their best bib and tucker</b> , are in a <b>festive</b> mood.	* klædt i * bedste * hagesmæk * halsklæde * festlig ~ stiveste puds	
<b>Dressing up</b> and <b>being dressed ( ) up</b> by the bridesmaids,	* klæde sig pænt / særligt på	* klæde ng. på
the bride wears a <b>long-sleeved wedding dress</b> .	* langærmet	* ~ brudekjole
<b>Speaking from memory</b> , Innson <b>gives / makes / delivers</b>	* tale fra hukommelsen	* holde >
a <b>well-prepared</b> and <b>moving / stirring / touching speech</b> .	( ~ uden manuskript ) * velforberedt	* rørende * tale bevægende
Most speeches are <b>well prepared</b> and <b>stimulating</b> .	* =	* ~ inspirerende
Some <b>spell-binding</b> and funny speeches are <b>unprepared</b> .	* medrivende	* uforberedt
A boring <b>speaker</b> and speech will <b>turn ( ) off</b> people.	* taler	* få ng. til at miste interessen
Although <b>ill-prepared</b> , one speech <b>has</b> them all <b>in stitches</b> .	* dårligt forberedt	* give ng. latteranfald
<b>20 Mostly speaking off the cuffs</b> , the <b>stimulating</b> speaker,	* tale > * improviseret * ~ inspirerende ( taler ) på stående fod	
often <b>unintentionally</b> funny, <b>keeps</b> them all <b>in stitches</b> .	* ufrivillig	* hold ng. i latterkrampe
Everybody <b>almost die laughing</b> at his <b>off-the-cuff</b> remarks.	* ved at falde om af grin	* improviseret på stående fod
<b>Sure</b> The Novice is happy, but will it <b>last</b> ?	* =	* vare ( ved )
When it comes to sex, Innson <b>s pares</b> her <b>feelings</b> .	* skåne ngs. følelser	
Innson knows that sexual impatience will <b>turn ( ) off</b> his wife.	* tage lysten fra ng.	
So in order not to <b>turn</b> her <b>off</b> , he is prepared to let her	* =	
take the initiative in <b>creating</b> a <b>romantic atmosphere</b> .	* skabe >	* romantisk * atmosfære stemning
At their <b>wedding night, not having a stitch on</b> , The Novice	* bryllupsnat	* ikke have en trævl på
<b>climbs into bed</b> , and, <b>insinuating</b> her arms <b>around</b> Innson,	* kravle ...	* anbringe ( en kropsdel ) + adv.
<b>30 she embraces / hugs</b> and <b>kisses</b> him passionately.	* omfavne ng.	* kysse ng.
<b>Not wearing a stitch</b> they <b>embrace / hug, kiss</b> ,	* uden et sting / ~ en trævl på	* ... hinanden * kysse
and make love in a <b>pleasingly relaxed atmosphere</b> .	* i > * behagelig * afslappert * atmosfære	
Until she <b>got to know</b> Innson, she couldn't be able to	* lære ng. at kende	* ikke være i stand til at >
<b>have a relationship with</b> a man <b>to save</b> her life.	* have at forhold til / indlade sig med ng.	* selv for alt i verden
She has <b>firmlly rejected</b> everybody else's <b>advances</b> .	* ~ på det bestemteste * afslå > * ngs. tilnærmelser ~ nægte at indlade sig med ng.	
Innson <b>turns</b> The Novice <b>into</b> a happy wife,	* gøre ng. til	
and <b>s pares</b> no effort to keep her happy.	* ikke spare nogen anstrengelser for at -	
<b>Pouting ( her lips )</b> for Innson, she <b>sure</b> (A) looks happy	* ~ lave trutmund	* bestemt, virkelig
feeling totally <b>healed by</b> Innson's love.	( for at gøre sig tiltrækkende ) * mentalt helet af ( ngs. kærlighed )	

**286** The old innkeeper's hearing, **eyesight**, and **memory**

are **poor** so first of all you have to **speak fairly loudly**.

So he decides to **turn** ( ) **over** the inn **to** his son.

Innson **secures** / **gets** a ( good ) **deal with** his father.

**Securing** a ( fair ) **deal for** himself and The Novice,

Innson **gets** a good **deal on taking** ( ) **over** the inn.

The Novice **certainly** never expected to become a landlady  
of an inn; she **definitely** never expected that.

Innson's father for his part **secures a deal for** his old age.

**10** Some old people want help, others most **definitely** do not.

Will the old man get the help he needs ? Yes, **definitely**.

Everybody hopes The Novice will soon **get pregnant**.

Not all women are able to **become pregnant, bear children**

and **bear** their husband a child, a daughter or son.

At the first **sure indications / signs of pregnancy**,  
the Novice tells Innson, who is very much **on tiptoe**,  
that she's most likely **pregnant with** their first child.

They talk about the sex of their **unborn** child / ( o-f ) **babe**.

Will it be a **baby son** or **baby daughter** ?

**20** Will they **favour** a child of a **certain** sex ? – **Definitely** not.

Of course a **baby girl** will be as welcome as a **baby boy**.

As soon as **it becomes / is known that** The Novice  
is going to **have a baby**, it **spreads like wildfire** that she's  
**expecting a baby / child**.

**Heavily pregnant**, and having become charmingly **plump**,

The Novice has **premonitory pains**.

When she's nine month **pregnant**, the day of **confinement**  
comes as it should when she **goes into labour**.

Her **waters** (pl.) **break** and she has **labour pains** (pl.).

**30** The **midwife tucks** her hair (up) **under** her **headscarf**  
while she **gets** the last **delivery preparations going**.

The midwife has **delivered** many babies.

**Giving birth**, some women have a **difficult delivery**.

**Tragically**, having a **stillbirth**, some women **give birth to**  
a **stillborn** baby, some women having a **premature birth**,  
give birth to a **premature** baby which might **die at birth**,  
and some women themselves **die in / during childbirth**.

**Born with a defect** ( a **birth defect** ), some people have  
been disabled / handicapped / **crippled** ( o-f ) **from birth**.

\* syn \* hukommelse

\* svag \* tale > \* temmelig \* højt

\* overdrage ngt. til ng.

\* sikre sig / få > \* aftale med ng.

\* sikre sig en aftale for ng.

\* ... for ngt. \* overtage ngt.

\* helt sikkert / bestemt

\* helt afgjort

\* sikre sig > \* aftale for ngt.

\* helt afgjort / bestemt

\* =

\* blive gravid

\* = \* føde børn

\* føde ng. ng.

\* sikre tegn på ngt. \* graviditet

\* oppe på tæerne  
spændt forventningsfuld  
\* gravid med ng.

\* ufødt \* baby

\* nyfødt søn \* ... datter

\* favorisere, begunstige \* bestemt \* ... ikke

foretrække  
\* pige barn \* drengebarn

\* blive kendt  
komme frem  
\* have \* ( et ) barn \* spredes som en løbeild

\* vente sig / barn

\* ~ højgravid \* buttet

\* plukveer

\* ... henne i graviditeten \* fødsel  
nedkomst

\* gå i fødsel

\* ngs. vand går \* ( fødsels- ) veer

\* jordemoder \* stoppe ngt. + adv. \* hovedtørklæde

\* sætte ngt. \* fødselsforberedelser \* i gang

\* hjælpe til verden

\* føde et barn \* svær fødsel

\* ganske tragisk \* føde ng.

\* dødfødt \* for tidlig fødsel

\* for tidligt født \* dø ved fødslen

\* dø under barnefødsel

\* ( være ) født med > \* defekt \* fødselsdefekt

\* fra fødslen \* forkrøble ng.

**287** While The Novice is **in labour** and the midwife assists in the **delivery**, Innson **paces perpetually** outside the room.

**Continuously pulling** his shirt **out** of his trousers and **tucking it in**, he **continually tucks in** his shirt, and pulls it out again as he **paces** up and down praying for an **easy delivery**.

**Unceasingly pacing** the floor / room **like a caged bird** he **incessantly tucks** a **lock** of **unruly** hair **behind** his ear.

Eventually, at the **second-stage labour pains**, the baby

**10** is about to be **delivered**, so **moaning** and **groaning**

**in / with pain**, the Novice soon after **delivers** her baby.

The Novice has **given birth to** a **fine healthy baby girl**.

The Novice's **eyes glitter / sparkle with joy** as the midwife **puts** the **newborn ( baby )** to the **bosom of** the Novice.

The **new** mother **cradles** her baby **against** her breast.

Innson ( 's **face** ) is **radiant with joy** at the happy news.  
`reidiënt

Relief **radiates from** him as both **mother** and **daughter** **are doing well / are in good health**.

He **radiates** happiness and **pride** at the **happy event**.

**20** Not until the **placenta** has **come out**, the **confinement** is **over**; not until then **it's all over**.

It has taken hours to **get it over ( with )**.

Although it has taken hours to **get it over and done with**, it's been a **normal delivery** for a woman **having** her **first** baby.

The midwife **rolls / wraps** the baby ( **up** ) in a blanket.

The **new** father **trembles in / with excitement** as he is allowed into the room to see his **firstborn** ( child / daughter ).

After her **childbirth**, The Novice is of course very **worn out**.

Although The Novice is very **exhausted** and **run down**, **30** her **eyes shine with happiness** when she sees Innson.

**Giving** each other a **radiant** and **appreciative smile**, both **new** parents **beam with satisfaction**.

The **face** of the **proud** father **shines with happiness** as he **proudly cradles** his **new baby daughter** in his arms.

After **childbirth** a **new** mother needs rest, so Innson is **anxious for** her **to** do as little as possible.

A **cradle** is prepared and **ready for** their baby.

All parents fear **cot** E/A **crib death** while their baby is asleep.

It's still a mystery what may be **the main culprit**.

\* i gang med at føde

\* fødsel \* vandre hvileløst > \* uophørligt \* + adv. nedkomst

\* uophørligt, ustandseligt \* trække ngt. ud af ngt.

\* putte / stikke / stoppe ind ( ned ) \* = \* =

\* vandre hvileløst + adv.

\* let fødsel

\* uophørligt \* gennemtrave ngt. \* som en fugl i bur

\* uophørligt \* putte / stikke / \* uregerlig \* bag ngt. stoppe ngt. + prep

\* ( fødsels- ) veer

\* forløst \* jamre > \* stønne >

\* i / af > \* smerte \* føde ng.

\* føde \* velskabt \* pigebar

\* ( øjne ) stråle af glæde

\* lægge ng. > \* nyfødt \* ( kvindes ) bryst (-party)

\* nybagt \* favne ng. mod ngt. \* bryst

\* ng. ( ngs. ansigt ) være strålende af glæde ~ stråle af glæde

\* stråle ud af ng. \* mor og datter

\* have det godt

\* stråle af \* stolthed \* over > \* lykkelig \* begivenhed & fødsel

\* moderkage \* & være født \* ~ fødsel

\* overstået

\* få ngt. ...

\* =

\* normal fødsel \* & førstegangsfødende

\* ~ pakke ng. ind i ( tæppe )

\* nybagt \* skælve \* i / af > \* sindsbevægelse spænding

\* førstefødt ( barn / datter )

\* fødslen \* udkørt udmattet \* =

\* ( øjnene ) stråle af > \* glæde

\* give ng. > \* strålende > \* anerkendende / \* smil taknemmeligt

\* nybagt \* stråle af glæde / tilfredshed

\* ansigt \* stolt \* stråle af glæde

\* stolt \* holde / bære ng. \* nyfødt \* babydatter beskyttende

\* barnefødsel \* nybagt

\* ~ nære et ønske for ng. om at -

\* vugge \* ( være ) parat til ng.

\* vuggedød

\* hovedskurken, ~ den vigtigste årsag

<b>288</b> Fortunately The Novice is able to <b>`breastfeed</b> ,	* amme, give bryst,	
When she <b>breast-feeds</b> her baby, she <b>feeds</b> milk <b>to</b> her /	* amme ng.	* fodre ng. til ng. ~ give ng. ng. * bryst
she <b>feeds</b> her ( <b>on</b> ) milk by turns from either of her <b>breasts</b> .	* fodre ng. ( med ) ngt. ~ give ng. ngt.	
Preparing to <b>nurse</b> ( her baby ), she <b>sits down in</b> the bed.	* amme ( ng. )	* ~ sætte sig i ng.
<b>Sitting in</b> the bed, she <b>tucks</b> her legs <b>up under</b> her,	* sidde i ng.	* trække ( benene ) op under sig
and <b>tucks</b> a blanket <b>around</b> her legs and <b>hips</b> .	* proppe / putte / stoppe ( et tæppe ) rundt om ng.	* ~ hofte
She <b>tucks</b> a piece of cloth <b>under</b> the baby's <b>chin</b>	* << under	* hage
to serve as a <b>bib</b> before she lets the baby <b>nurse</b> .	* hagesmæk	* få bryst
So happily sitting with her legs <b>tucked up under</b> her,	* trukket op under ( sig )	
<b>10</b> and a blanket <b>tucked around</b> her, she <b>suckles</b> her baby.	* stoppet omkring ( sig )	* amme ng.
Some new mothers <b>get the blues</b> ( <b>post-natal depression</b> ).	* få mismodige følelser	* ( efter- ) fødselsdepression
Never suffering from <b>baby blues</b> , the <b>nursing</b> mother	* fødselsdepression	* ammende
takes great pleasure in <b>sensing</b> her baby <b>suckling</b> .	* sanse ng.	* die, få bryst
The Novice and Innson <b>take turns in</b> <u>tucking their baby in</u> .	* skiftes til at -	* putte ng.
They <b>take turns to tuck</b> ( ) <b>up</b> the baby in the evening.	* =	
They <b>tuck in</b> the sheet and <b>tuck</b> the blanket <b>in</b> neatly.	* stoppe ng. ind	
Few parents <b>take it in turns</b> (E); very few parents	* skiftes	
<b>take it in turns to tuck</b> the blanket <b>around</b> their children,	* ... med at -	* stoppe ng. rundt om ng.
and take care that they fall asleep <b>safely</b> .	* trygt	
<b>20</b> They <b>rock</b> the <b>cradle</b> to <b>quiten</b> the baby.	* rokke / gynge ng.	* vugge      * berolige ng.
<b>Safely</b> tucked up, the baby <b>quietens</b> quickly.	* forsvarligt	* falde til ro
The Novice <b>`tiptoes</b> around <b>a little</b> ( <b>time</b> ) / <b>a</b> ( <b>little</b> ) <b>while</b>	* liste ( omkring )	* en ( lille ) smule tid ( adv.) kort stund
/ <b>eE</b> <b>a</b> ( <b>little</b> ) <b>bit</b> ( <b>of time</b> ) to <b>do</b> a <b>few little things</b> .	* =	* ordne nogle småting
She <b>turns up</b> the corner of the blanket to <b>peep</b> / <b>peek at</b>	* folde ng.	* kigge kort på ng.
her baby before she leaves the room <b>tiptoeing</b> / <b>on tiptoe</b> .	* listende / på listefødder	
The baby holds a <b>security blanket</b> to <b>`comfort</b> herself.	* sutteklud	* trøste ng.
An old <b>arm chair</b> is Innson's <b>baby</b> and <b>security blanket</b> .	* kælebarn	* =
Never <b>sparing with</b> their praise, the parents carefully	* sparsom / tilbageholdende med ng.	
<b>follow</b> the baby <b>with</b> their <b>eyes</b> when she takes her first	* følge ng. med øjnene	
<b>30 uncertain</b> steps.	* usikker	
Having a lot of children may be an <b>insurance against</b>	* forsikring imod ng.	
some children dying, and a large family is a way of <b>insuring</b>	* sikre sig >	
oneself <b>against loneliness</b> in old age.	* imod ng.	* ensomhed
She smiles <b>appreciatively at</b> the <b>memory</b> / <b>remembrance</b>	* taknemmeligt	* ved >      * erindring / minde >
<b>of</b> her and Innson's first <b>tender</b> kiss when he had first <b>held</b> her	* om ng.      * blidt / ømt ( kys )	* holde ng. >
<b>in</b> a tender <b>embrace</b> .	* i ( øm ) omfavelse, ~ ( ømt ) i sin favn	
<b>If</b> ( her ) <b>memory serves</b> her <b>well</b> / <b>correctly</b> ,	* ~ hvis ng. husker rigtigt	
it was she who couldn't <b>hold</b> ( ) <b>`back</b> her <b>tender</b> feelings.	* holde ng. tilbage	* ømme ( følelser )



**289** Innson and The Novice **make** an **idol** of each other,  
and both of them **idolize** their children.

They are the **jewel in the crown of** their parents' life.

Although Innson and The Novice are not too **tolerant of / towards** their children, some people consider their **uncon-**

**ditional** love for their children to **border / verge** on **idolatry**.

The Novice keeps her **tokens of** Innsons love for her

**tucked away** in her **jewel box**.

**Devoted to** their children, the parents have very **definite**

**10 ideas on upbringing: on how to bring ( ) 'up** children.

' **Spare the rod and spoil the child ?** '

Do parents have a family **for the benefit of** themselves  
or **for the benefit of** their children ?

The Novice and Innson want their children to **be secure**,  
and **feel good about themselves** so they spare the rod.

On Sundays, they **dress** their children **in** their **best clothes**.

Few things **are sacred to** The Novice, **but** the welfare  
of her children, her husband, her **'father-in-law**,  
and other **sincere** and trustworthy people.

**20** Human life must **be sacred** so her children **benefit from**  
the **security of a loving family ( life )**.

There is a **pregnant 'pause / silence**.

Some experiences **bring ( ) 'back sad memories**.

As the Novice often **spares a thought for** the nuns still  
living in the convent, she also **spares a thought for**  
**what** had **become of** her if she had taken different decisions.

She often **spares it a thought**.

The Novice's **thoughts** often **turn to** those nuns who are  
**heading for** an **uncertain fate** by **placing** their **fate / life**

**30 in the hands of** God when represented by

an **egocentric egomaniac** like the prioress.

She also **turn** her **thoughts to** the **underprivileged** people  
who **suffer ( or will suffer )** an **unkind, cruel** and **hard fate**.

**Lamenting** their **adverse** and **inexorable fate**,  
she **laments that** people's **oddity** or **oddities** or dire poverty  
easily **enslaves** them **to** drunkenness, prostitution and crime.

' Why must some people's **lot** be so **hard** ? ' she **laments**,  
having often felt rather an **oddity** herself.

\* gøre ng. til idol

\* forgude / tilbede ng.

\* ~ det kostbareste af alt

\* tolerant overfor >

\* ... ng.

\* ube-

\* tinget ( kærlighed )

\* grænse /  
på grænsen til >

\* forgudelse  
tilbedelse

\* tegn / symbol på ngt.

\* gemme ngt. bort

\* ~ smykke skrin

\* hengiven overfor ng.

\* bestemt

\* ide om >

\* opdragelse

\* om hvxx -

\* opdrage ng.

\* spar >

\* kæp, ~ spanskør

\* ødelæg

\* barnet

~ gøre barnet forkælet

\* ~ til gavn for ( ng. selv )

\* - - - for ( ng. )

\* være tryk

\* have det godt med sig selv

\* klæde ng. i >

\* bedste, ~ fineste  
~ give ng. ders ... tøj på

\* klæder, tøj

\* hellig for ng.

\* undtagen

\* ~ svigerfar

\* oprigtig, ærlig

\* pålidelig

\* være helligt

\* nyde godt af ngt.

\* tryghed ved >

\* kærlig

\* familieliv

\* betydningsmættet  
megetsigende

\* bringe ngt. tilbage

\* trist

\* minde

\* ofre / skænke ng. en tanke

\* =

\* hvad blive af ng.

\* skænke det en tanke

\* tanke

\* vende tilbage til

\* styre mod >

\* usikker

\* skæbne

\* lægge sin  
skæbne / liv >

\* ngs. hænder

\* selvcentreret

\* sygeligt selvoptaget person

\* vende tankerne mod

\* underprivilegeret

\* lide >

\* uvenlig

\* grusom

\* hård

\* skæbne

( ~ gå en ... skæbne i møde )

\* sørge over / begræde ngt.

\* ugunstig

\* uafvendelig

\* sørge over /  
begræde at -

\* særhed

\* & besynderlige /  
besynderlighed

\* sær ebenskab

\* slavebinde ng. til ngt.

\* lod, skæbne

\* hård

\* klage

\* særlig, original

**290** Whether she has been **smiled on** by **fortune**,  
or everything has just happened **by a freak of chance**  
or **by** ( a strange / happy ) **coincidence**, The Novice never  
**fails to count** herself **lucky that** she had the good fortune  
to end up **in a loving and trusting relationship**.

She sometimes lights a candle, and **sheds a tear in**  
**memory / remembrance of** her **loved ones who have died**.

She **laments** their death, but their **memory** (U) **lives on**.

**Fate** seems to **be merciful / kind** only **to** a chosen few.

**10** while the rest ( will ) **suffer** a **sad** and **sorry fate**.

She never went out to **see** the convent **again**.

**The very idea of** seeing the convent again **appalled** her.

**The very idea of** a visit **disgusted** her.

**The mere thought of** going there **sickened** her.

**The mere thought of** the convent **made** her **sick**.

**Shivering with** anger **at the mere thought of** the prioress,  
she **trembled with fear at the very idea of** seeing the convent.

Every day Innson **counts** himself **lucky to** have met  
such a **remarkable** and **versatile** woman, **remarkable for**

**20** her **versatile** talent and consideration for her fellow beings.

Having a **real lust for life**, the Novice is a **caring** wife,  
and a **business partner** of extraordinary talent and **versatility**.

**Looking back on** their **lives**, Innson and The Novice  
often talk about the **caprices / freaks of fortune**.

As they **touch on** all the **joys** and **sorrows of** life

they agree that even if **fortune** is **blind**,

**fortune** has **favoured** both of them

as **fate** has eventually **been kind / merciful to** The Novice.

Having **put** a lot of **energy into / to** all their plans,

**30** The Novice and Innson have been **applying / channelling**  
**/ devoting / putting** all their **energies into / in** the collective.

Being wise enough to **wear both belt and braces**,  
their **belt-and-braces** policy many times proved to be  
a **safety net** in critical situations.

**After all, when all is said and done**,  
**when it came to the point / crunch**,  
**when the chips were down, in good times and bad**,  
their never **faltering mutual affection** has been **crucial**.

The Novice was **truly** an **extraordinary** woman.

\* tilsmilet af > \* skæbnen

\* ~ ved tilfældets spil

\* & ved et ( mærkeligt / lykkeligt ) sammentræf

\* undlade at - \* prise sig lykkelig over at -

\* i > \* kærligt \* tillidsfuldt \* forhold

\* fælde en tåre \* i >

\* mindet om ng. \* & sine afdøde kære

\* sørge over ngt. \* mindet om ng. \* leve videre

\* skæbnen \* være nådig /  
venlig stemt overfor ng.

\* lide > \* trist, sørgelig > \* skæbne  
( gå en ... i møde )

\* se ngt. igen / gense ngt.

\* bare ideen at - \* frastøde / forfærde ng.

\* ... om ngt. \* frastøde / gøre ng. utilpas

\* bare tanken om at -

\* bare tanken om ngt. \* ~ gøre ng. utilpas

\* skælte af ( vrede ) \* bare ved > \* tanken om ngt.

\* ... ( frygt ) \* = \* ideen om at -

\* ~ prise sig > \* lykkelig over at -

\* bemærkelsesværdig \* alsidig ( kvinde ) \* ... for ngt.

\* alsidigt ( talent )

\* ~ have livsmod \* omsorgsfuld

\* forretningspartner \* alsidighed

\* se tilbage på > \* liv

\* ~ skæbnens luner

\* berøre ngt. \* glæder \* sorger i ngt.

\* skæbnen er blind

\* ... tilgodese ng.

\* skæbnen > \* være venlig / nådig mod ng.

\* lægge > \* energi i ngt.

\* lægge > \* kanalisere >

\* hengive > \* lægge > \* sine kræfter i ngt.

\* gå med både bælte og seler

\* bælte-og-seler ( politik )

\* sikkerhedsnet

\* ~ når alt kommer til alt \* - = -

\* når det kom til > \* punktet / knaset  
~ stykket / noget afgørende

\* når > \* spånerne var nede \* i gode såvel som  
~ noget var kritisk dårlige tider

\* vaklende \* gensidig \* hengivenhed \* afgørende  
kærlighed

\* i sandhed \* usædvanlig ( kvinde )

## A FAMILY TODAY

<b>291 To go on holiday</b> a family must <b>make savings</b> .	* tage på ferie	* lave opsparing
A family have been <b>saving ( up ) to go on</b> their <b>holiday</b> .	* spare op	* tage på sin ferie
They have come up with all kinds of `money- <b>saving</b> ideas.	* -besparende	
They have <b>saved ( up ) for</b> a holiday / <b>to go on</b> a holiday.	* ... til ngt.	* tage på / holde ferie
They managed to <b>save ( up )</b> enough <b>to invest in</b> a new car.	* spare ( nok ) op til at -	* investere i ngt.
<b>Going camping</b> and staying at a <b>campsite</b> E/A <b>&lt;ground</b>	* tage på camping	* campingplads
was once <b>the poor relation</b> of <b>staying at / in</b> a <b>hotel</b> .	* fattigmandsudgaven af ngt.	* bo > * på hotel
The family <b>make</b> all <b>attempts to save on costs</b> .	* gøre ... forsøg på at	* spare på udgifter
They <b>make</b> every <b>attempt at saving ( up )</b> .	* spare op	
<b>10</b> They have <b>saved ( up )</b> almost £1000 so far.	* spare ngt. op	
People may <b>save ( up )</b> their <b>money on</b> a <b>savings account</b>	* opspare > * penge * på > * opsparingskonto	
<b>with a savings bank</b> or <b>save (up)</b> with a <b>building society</b> E/A	* i > * sparekasse * opspare penge i > * kreditforening	
a <b>savings and `loan ( association )</b> which is a bank that	* =	
lends people money to buy a house or a flat E/A an apartment.	*	
Both kinds of financial institutions must <b>be sure / certain</b>	* sikker >	
<b>that they invest</b> ( the <b>saver's</b> money ) <b>safely</b> .	* på at - * investere ( * sparer's penge ) * sikkert	
To <b>be sure / certain of ( making ) safe investments</b> ,	* sikker på ( at ) ngt. * sikker * investering	
they must <b>be sure / certain to</b> make safe investments.	* ... at gøre ngt.	
So they <b>make sure / certain that</b> their investments <b>are</b>	* sikker på at -	
<b>20 safe</b> by <b>investing</b> ( the saver's money ) <b>in</b> enterprises	* sikker * investere ( ngt. ) i ngt.	
that <b>return</b> a <b>secured rate</b> of <b>interest</b> .	* tilbagegive > * sikret * sats * rente	
Even if they <b>are sure</b> , they'd better <b>make certain</b> .	* ( føle sig ) sikker * sikre sig	
They <b>make sure / certain of</b> ( getting ) a <b>safe return</b>	* sikre sig ( at få ) ngt. * sikker * afkast udbytte	
( <b>on</b> their investments <b>in</b> a number of reliable enterprises ).	* af ngt.	
As they never make <b>insecure</b> investments, the savers	* usikker	
<b>profit from</b> a feeling of <b>safety</b> rather than higher <b>earnings</b> /	* profitere / drage fordel af > * sikkerhed * udbytte >	
a higher <b>profit / yield / return on</b> their investments.	* profit / afkast / udbytte af ngt.	
An increase in <b>interest rates</b> is good news for the <b>savers</b> .	* rente- * sats * sparerer	
A <b>unit trust</b> E/A <b>mutual fund</b> is attractive to <b>small savers</b> .	* investeringsforening / -selskab * småsparere	
<b>30</b> Being <b>traded</b> , sold and bought, <b>on</b> the ` <b>stock market</b> ,	* handle ngt. * aktiemarked / -børs	
<b>stocks</b> and <b>shares</b> are <b>trading on</b> the <b>stock exchange</b> .	* aktie * aktieandel * være i handel * =	
A <b>share</b> E/A <b>stock holder</b> may have a <b>certificate of stock</b> .	* aktie (-attest / bevis )	
<b>Price movements, rises</b> and <b>falls in share / stock prices</b>	* kursbevægelser * kursstigning * -fald	
according to the <b>share / stock index</b> , decide whether	* aktie- * indeks, oversigt	
a <b>holder makes / earns / turns</b> a <b>profit due to appreciation</b> ,	* ( aktie- ) ejer * få et overskud pga. * værdistigning ( kurs- )	
or <b>makes / suffers</b> a <b>loss due to depreciation</b> .	* lide et tab pga. * værdifald	
An investment may <b>appreciate</b> or <b>depreciate</b> ,	* vokse / falde i værdi ( over tid )	
and in case of bankruptcy, the shareholders <b>incur losses</b> .	* pådrage sig > * tab	

<b>292 A stockjobber gambles on a huge rate of return</b>	* børsspekulant	* satse på ngt.	* forrentningsafkast udbytterate / -niveau
<b>on his capital</b> but has to <b>face ( up to ) the fact that</b> at times	* på >	* kapital	* se i øjnene / være indstillet på at -
the <b>price indicates</b> a loss or an extremely <b>poor return</b> .	* kursen	* pege på ngt.	* pover / ringe > * udbytte indtjening
Looking for the highest <b>earnings / yield on his investments</b> ,	* satse på ngt.	* udbytte af / indtjening på ngt.	* investering
a lucky <b>speculator in stocks and shares</b> may have	* børsspekulant		* =
an <b>average rate of profit of</b> more than 20 %.	* gennemsnit		* udbytterate på x
<b>Government stocks</b> and other <b>gilt-edged securities</b> (pl.)	* statsaktie / E: statsobligation	* guldrandet	* værdipapirer
like gilt-edged <b>bonds</b> , stocks and shares	* obligation		
are a <b>safe / good `bet for</b> a safe <b>long-term growth</b> .	* sikkert bud for ngt.	* langsigtet	* værdistigning
<b>10</b> The bank puts and keeps cash and <b>securities</b> in a <b>safe</b> .	* værdipapirer		* pengeskab
During the night they are <b>securely locked `up in</b> the safe.	* sikkert		* låse ngt. inde i ngt.
People can rent a <b>`safe(ty) deposit box</b> in which they can	* bankboks		
put and keep documents and valuables <b>for safekeeping</b> .	* sikker opbevaring		
Banks <b>lend ( out )</b> money; they <b>lend</b> people money.	* udlåne ngt.		* låne ng. ngt.
They <b>lend ( out )</b> money <b>to</b> people who can	* ( ud-) låne ngt. til ng.		
<b>find, provide</b> and <b>give security for</b> the <b>loan</b> ,	* skaffe	* =	* give / stille > * sikkerhed for ngt. * lån
and who are able to <b>repay</b> the <b>loan</b> with <b>interest</b> (U).	* tilbagebetale ngt.	* =	* ( med ) renter
Banks <b>loan</b> (eA) money; they <b>loan</b> people money.	* udlåne ngt.		* låne ng. ngt.
Banks <b>loan</b> money <b>to</b> people who want to	* udlåne ... til		
<b>20 borrow</b> money ( <b>from</b> a bank ). <i>Look at page 300 !</i>	* låne ... ( fra )		
To <b>take out</b> a <b>loan</b> you may have to <b>apply for</b> the <b>loan</b>	* tage et lån	* ansøge om >	* =
by he <b>sending</b> ( ) <b>`in</b> an <b>application for / to</b> have the loan.	* indsende ngt.		* ansøgning om ngt. / at -
A <b>lender</b> prefers to offer a loan <b>secured on</b> real estate.	* udlåner		* ~ mod sikkerhed i ngt.
As a <b>borrower</b> can use his house to <b>secure</b> a loan,	* låntager		* ~som sikkerhed for ( lån )
he can <b>take out</b> a <b>loan secured on</b> his home.	* optage >	* lån	* mod sikkerhed i ngt.
If the borrower <b>offers</b> his house as a <b>guarantee for</b> a loan,	* garanti / kaution for ngt.		
he <b>uses</b> his house <b>as security for</b> the loan	* bruge ngt. som sikkerhed for ngt		
So his home is being <b>held as security for</b> the loan.	* have ngt. som sikkerhed for ngt.		
If a borrower hasn't got real estate, he must find a <b>guarantor</b>	* garant, kautionist		
<b>30 to act / be / stand / surety for</b> him and for the loan.	* stå som / være >		* kautionist for ng&t.
( If a prisoner is <b>granted bail with a surety of</b> a certain sum,	* tilkendt kautioneret løsladelse		* mod en kaution på x
he must <b>pay surety to be released on bail / bond</b> .	* betale ...		* løslade mod kaution
<b>Bail</b> is <b>set at</b> a <b>considerable amount</b> of money / <b>sum</b>	* kaution	* fastsætte	* betragtelig * mængde / sum ngt. til ngt.
so someone else may have to <b>stand / go bail</b> (for him). )	* stille med ( løsladelses-) kaution		
The family has <b>put</b> all their <b>savings into</b> buying a new car.	* bruge al sin opsparing til		
Buying the car <b>took</b> all their <b>savings</b> except for the <b>savings</b>	* koste ... opsparing		* opsparing >
<b>for</b> the the children's studies and the parents' <b>old `age</b> .	* til ngt.		* alderdom
The family didn't <b>borrow heavily</b> ( <b>from</b> the bank ).	* låne voldsomt ( af ng. )		

293 The dealer has <b>guaranteed</b> the quality of the car,	* garantere ngt.		
and <b>assured</b> the family of its qualities.	* forsikre ng. om ngt.		
It <b>comes with / carries</b> a <b>two-year warranty / guarantee</b> .	* komme med / bære > ~ leveres med >	* toårig	* garantibevis
The family occasionally <b>loan</b> the neighbours their car.	* låne ng. ngt.		
They <b>loan</b> their car ( <b>out</b> ) <b>to</b> the neighbours <b>on occasion(s)</b> .	* ... ngt. ( ud ) til ng.		* lejlighedsvis
When they <b>give</b> the neighbours the <b>loan of</b> their car,	* give ng. ngt. til låns		
the neighbours <b>have</b> the car <b>on loan</b> ( <b>from</b> them ).	* have ngt. til låns ( > af ng. )		
The parents want a <b>secure future</b> for the family.	* tryk fremtid		
Both parents have a <b>secure job</b> and a <b>secure income</b> ,	* sikkert job		* ... indkomst
10 enough money to make them feel <b>financially secure</b> ,	* økonomisk sikret		
and <b>tuck away</b> a <b>sum</b> every month in a <b>savings plan</b> .	* lægge ngt. tilside	* sum	* opsparingsordning
<b>Tucking away</b> an amount of money every month	* =		
is a <b>savings plan</b> , meant to <b>secure</b> the family's <b>future</b> .	* opsparingsplan		* sikre ngs. fremtid
Having enough money <b>tucked away in</b> a <b>savings account</b>	* lagt til side	* på >	* opsparingskonto
<b>at / with</b> a <b>bank</b> is a financial <b>safety net</b> .	* hos / i >	* bank	* ( økonomisk ) sikkerhedsnet
The parents are familiar with <b>financial insecurity</b> .	* økonomisk usikkerhed		
During the paren's childhood, their parents had to	* utryghed		
<b>work in</b> low-paid <b>insecure jobs</b> .	* arbejde i >	* usikker	* job
Most families <b>at that time</b> were <b>financially insecure</b> .	* på det tidspunkt	* økonomisk	* usikker/ utryg
20 Everybody may <b>fall victim</b> : <b>fall victim to cataclysms</b>	* blive offer	* ... for ngt.	* katastrofe
either caused by the <b>vagaries</b> (pl.) of nature or by man.	* luner / omskifteligheder		
Every day, <b>all over the world</b> , people <b>fall victim to</b>	* over hele verden		* <<
<b>natural</b> or <b>man-made disasters / catastrophes</b> .	* naturskabt	* menneskeskabt	* katastrofe
People are <b>victims of</b> storms, <b>lightning</b> , <b>flood(s)</b> , draught,	* offer for ngt.	* lynen	* oversvømmelse(r)
<b>earthquakes</b> , <b>volcanic eruptions</b> , failure of crops etc;	* jordskælv		* vulkanudbrud
<b>victims of</b> accidents, ( acts of ) crime, rape, <b>murder</b> , war,	* offer for >		* mord
<b>terror</b> and <b>terrorism</b> etc. ; <b>victims</b> of illness and sickness,	* terror		* -isme
<b>epidemic</b> or <b>endemic</b> diseases, <b>cerebral haemorrhage</b> ,	* epidemisk	* endemisk	* hjerneblødning
<b>coronary</b> or <b>cerebral thrombosis</b> caused by <b>blood clots</b> .	* tidsrelateret	* stedsrelateret	
30 Famine, <b>epidemic</b> , <b>cancer</b> , <b>stroke</b> , <b>Aids</b> , <b>crash</b> ,	* hjerte -	* hjerne-	* blodprop
assault, and <b>robbery victims</b> have <b>suffered</b> a <b>sorry fate</b> .	* epidemi	* kræft	* slagtilfælde
<b>Insurance</b> and <b>insurance business</b> are <b>intended to</b>	* =	* bilsammenstød	
<b>indemnify</b> a <b>policyholder</b> <b>against</b> loss or damage.	* røveri	* offer	* lide en krank skæbne
So an <b>insurance company</b> intends to <b>indemnify</b>	* forsikring	* -svirksomhed	* tilsigter
<b>the insured</b> for the damage or loss suffered.	* dække ng. mod		* forsikringstager
The company intends to <b>reimburse</b> loss or damage:	* holde ng. skadesløs for		
<b>reimburse</b> the <b>claimant</b> for any loss and damage	* forsikringsselskab	* betale erstatning til ng. >	
that occurs <b>under</b> the <b>terms of</b> the <b>contract</b> .	* den / de forsikrede		* for ngt.
	* erstatte ngt.		
	* holde ng. skadesløs for ngt.		* fordringshaver
	* ~ ifølge >	* betingelse i >	* kontrakt

**294** In many cases it's wise to **take out** (an) **insurance**

So many people **take out** a **policy** to **secure indemnity**  
( **on** anything ( whatever ) **in case of** loss, damage or death ).

You can **insure** life, your person and property **against**

**loss** or **harm** arising in specified **contingencies**  
as accident, fire, death, **disablement**, theft **or the like**

**in consideration of** a payment **proportional** / **proportionate**  
**to the risk involved.**

It's wise to **have** adequate **insurance cover** E/A **coverage.**

**10** To have adequate **accident cover** means to have

adequate **cover against accidental damage.**

It may be necessary to **have** more than one **insurance;**

to **have** and **pay insurance on** your life and health,  
your house, its **contents**, your car and other **properties.**

( **real** / **personal properties** ~ **immovables** / **movables** ).

Many people **work in insurance.**

Today the **insurance industry** is **worldwide.**

A committee may **recommend** a foreigner ( **to** the board  
of a company ) ( **for** the post ) ( **as** a director ).

**20 Insurance brokers** also called **insurance agents**

of an insurance company **procure insurance policies,**  
and **issue policies on** a whole lot of unfortunate  
occurrences for people and businesses of all kinds.

Having **recommended** a variety of insurances **to** people,  
helped people **navigate** the complex **insurance system,**  
and helped them consider all **contingencies,**  
the broker or agent eventually **writes insurance.**

The broker or agent may **recommend that** people  
**take out insurance against** loss and harm, fire, water

**30** and storm damage, theft etc, **have insurance against**  
loss of income due to unemployment, and **have insurance for**  
your health and **on** your belongings.

You can **insure** yourself **against** long term illness,  
and the insurance company strongly recommends  
**insuring against** sickness.

A **third party insurance** or **third party policy** has  
**third party cover** which means that it pays money to someone  
who is **accidentally** hurt or whose property is damaged.

\* tegne forsikring

\* = \* sikre sig ngt.

\* ... for ngt.

\* forsikre ngt. mod ngt.

\* tab \* skade / fortræd

\* skadesløsholdelse  
erstatning, -s-ydelse  
\* i tilfælde af ngt.

\* ( uforudset ) tilfælde

\* invalidering

\* eller lignende

\* som betaling for ngt.

\* i forhold til ngt.

\* det indebærer

\* forsikringsdækning

\* uheldsdækning

\* dækning mod >

\* uhelds-

\* skade

\* forsikring

\* få / have >

\* betale >

\* forsikring på ngt.

\* indhold ( af flere ting )

\* ejendele

\* ~ fast ejendom / personlige ejendele ( ~ løsøre )

\* forsikringsbranchen

\* forsikringsforetagende

\* verdensomspændende

\* anbefale ng.

( \* til ng. )

\* ( til ngt. )

( som ngt. )

\* forsikringsagent

\* skaffe /  
tilvejebringe ngt.

\* forsikringspolice

\* udstede >

\* ... angående

\*

\* anbefale ngt. til ng. / ng. ngt

\* finde rede i ngt.

\* forsikringssystem

\* eventualitet  
mulighed

\* & udfærdige

\* forsikring

\* anbefale at -

\* tegne forsikring mod ngt.

\* få / have forsikring mod ngt.

\* ... for ngt.

\* på ngt.

\* forsikre sig mod ngt.

\*

\* <<

\* ansvarsforsikring

\* ansvarsdækning

\* ved et uheld

<b>295</b> A broker or agent <b>writes life insurance /E&amp; assurance,</b>	* & udfærdige >	* livs-	* forsikring
health, household, fire, car, travel etc. <b>insurance</b> (U)	* ( helbreds-, husstands-, brand-, rejse- )	* forsikring	
as well as <b>insurance against</b> theft, and other <b>contingencies</b>	* forsikring mod ( tyveri )	* ( uforudset ) tilfældighed	
<b>causing loss</b> or <b>harm.</b>	* forårsage >	* tab	* skade, fortræd
The <b>insurance policy</b> is the written agreement	* forsikringspolice		
between an <b>insurer</b> and <b>the insured.</b>	* forsikringsgiver	* forsikreingtager	
<b>Paying insurance</b> on everything <b>insured,</b>	* betale forsikring på >	* forsikret	
you <b>pay</b> an <b>insurance premium</b> on every kind of <b>insurance.</b>	* ... forsikringspræmie		
Everything <b>insured</b> should be <b>insured for</b> no less than	* forsikret	* ... for	
<b>10</b> enough to secure <b>indemnification</b> or <b>reimbursement.</b>	* skadesløsholdelse erstatning / -ydelse	* godtgørelse	
It should secure <b>indemnity against</b> any loss and damage.	* =		
The insurance companies <b>pay indemnities</b> to <b>the insured</b>	* betale >	* erstatning ( til ng.)	* forsikringstager
who have <b>suffered / sustained</b> a <b>loss</b> or <b>damage.</b>	* ng. lide > / tage >	* tab	* skade
If your body or any property insured <b>suffers / sustains</b>	* ngt. lide >		
only <b>minor / slight damage</b> is regarded as your <b>own risk.</b>	* småskade	* selvrisiko	
The insured should take advice to <b>insure</b> himself <b>against</b>	* sikre sig mod at -		
being <b>misled by</b> an <b>insurer.</b>	* blive vildledt af ng.	* forsikringsgiver	
A <b>loss adjuster</b> E/A an <b>insurance adjuster</b> or <b>claimsman</b>	* taksator		
calculates <b>indemnities</b> and decides how much to pay	* erstatning, skadesgodtgørelse		
<b>20</b> people when they <b>claim for the loss</b> on their <b>insurance</b>	* forlange / kræve dækning af forsikringen		
or <b>claim the damage</b> on their <b>insurance.</b>	* <<<		
A company can <b>refuse to insure</b> certain persons	* afslå at -	* forsikre ng. & ng.	
and property.	*		
As it's impossible to foresee all <b>contingencies,</b>	* eventualiteter, ( uforudset ) tilfælde		
the insurance companies must have a <b>contingency fund</b>	* beredskabsfond		
<b>ready for / readily available</b> for all possible <b>contingencies.</b>	* tilgængelig * uden * tilgængelig * eventualiteter for > videre for > ~ uforudsete udgifter		
If a car is stolen, everybody hopes to find it <b>abandoned</b>	* forladt, efterladt		
and <b>undamaged.</b>	* uskadt		
Many companies won't <b>insure</b> young drivers	* forsikre ng.		
<b>30</b> so even if the vehicle is <b>insured,</b> a young man may not	* forsikre ngt.		
be <b>insured to</b> drive the car.	* ... ng. ved at -		
<b>Further information</b> is <b>available on application</b> to	* yderligere * information * tilgængelig * ved hen-		
the insurance company.	* vendelse til ng.		
The father <b>scrawls / scribbles</b> the name of the agent	* nedkradse ngt. >		
and <b>scribbles down</b> the phone number <b>on</b> a <b>scrap</b> of <b>paper.</b>	* kradse ngt. ned >	* på >	* lap * papir
Having <b>scrawled / scribbled in pencil</b> <b>all over</b> the paper,	* lave kruseduller * med blyant	* overalt på ngt.	
the paper is covered in <b>scrawl(s) / scribble(s)</b> after his call.	* kruseduller		
He <b>deposits</b> pencil and paper <b>on</b> top of a book.	* anbringe ngt. på ngt.		
di`pázits			

<b>296 Life insurance</b> /E& <b>life assurance</b> offers the family	* livsforsikring
<b>financial security</b> in the event of the death of <b>the assured</b> (E).	* finansiel / økonomisk sikkerhed * den livsforsikrede
The money paid <b>returns to</b> the <b>surviving</b> family members.	* vende tilbage til ng. * ~ efterladt
So they receive a sum <b>in insurance</b> /E& <b>assurance</b> .	* i forsikring
The <b>sum insured</b> /E& <b>sum assured</b> is <b>agreed with</b>	* forsikringssummen * aftale / bestemme ngt. med ng.
the ( <b>life</b> ) <b>insurance</b> /E& <b>assurance company</b> ,	* ( livs- ) forsikringselskab
and the terms are written down in a life <b>insurance policy</b> /	* forsikringspolice
E& life <b>assurance policy</b> .	* =
<b>In recent years</b> a <b>handful</b> of national <b>networks of</b>	* i / indenfor de seneste år * håndfuld * netværk af >
<b>10 insurance companies</b> have been <b>stitched together</b> .	* selskaber * ( blive ) knyttet sammen / forenet
<b>Taxpayers' expenses</b> for insurance ( premiums ) can be	* skatteyder * udgifter til ngt.
<b>withdrawn on</b> their <b>tax form</b> / <b>tax return</b> .	* fratrække ngt. på > * selvangivelse
A <b>pension scheme</b> offers financial <b>security</b> in old age	* pensionsordning
when the elderly and <b>infirm</b> face the <b>insecurities</b> of old age.	* ~ de syge og svage * usikkerhed, utryghed
The family are able to <b>feel secure about</b> the <b>future</b> .	* føle sig tryk med hensyn til fremtiden
<b>It's reassuring to</b> know that they are financially <b>secured</b> .	* betryggende at - * sikret
It's <b>reassuring that</b> a financial secure future is <b>assured</b> .	* = * sikret givet
Having <b>explored</b> the car <b>market</b> the family bought	* udforske > * marked
a <b>show model</b> and <b>made a saving of</b> £1000.	* udstillingsmodel * opnå en besparelse på
<b>20</b> The government has introduced <b>tax incentives</b>	* skatteincitament / -tilskyndelse
for <b>fuel-efficient</b> cars.	* brændstof- * effektiv
As this kind of car <b>means savings in</b> fuel,	* betyde > * besparelser af ngt.
they can <b>make big savings on</b> fuel bills with this car.	* opnå ... besparelse på ngt.
It's one of the <b>safest</b> cars too as plenty of <b>life(-)saving</b>	* sikreste * livreddende
<b>devices</b> are standard <b>features of</b> the car.	* opfindelse, indretning * element, del
<b>`Safety glass, `seat or safety belts, and airbags</b> are	* mekanisme, apparat * egenskab, funktion
big <b>`lifesavers</b> in cars.	* sikkerhedsglas * sikkerhedssele * =
The designers have <b>sacrificed</b> fancy design <b>for utility</b> .	* redder af liv
<b>Additionally / in addition</b> , it's <b>cheap to</b> buy <b>spare parts</b>	* ofre ngt. til fordel for > * anvendelighed
<b>30</b> or ( <b>car</b> ) <b>spares</b> (E) for this <b>make</b> of car.	* i tilgift * billigt at ( købe ) * reservedele
Many people are <b>slaves of</b> their motor car.	* = * fabrikat mærke
Moreover some car owners are so <b>absorbed in</b> their car	* slave af ngt.
that they seem <b>devoted to</b> their <b>baby</b> .	* opslugt af / gå op i ngt.
A fuel- E/A gas- <b>guzzler</b> has got a huge <b>fuel tank</b> .	* hengive sig til ngt. * kælebarn
' A car that <b>guzzels</b> fuel – <b>Spare me !</b> ' the mother says.	* ( benzin- ) sluger * brændstoftank
A driver should <b>keep a safe distance from</b> the car in front.	* spise / drikke ngt. i en fart * spar mig
A poorly <b>maintained</b> car soon shows signs of	* holde sig i sikker afstand fra ngt.
poor <b>`maintenance</b> / <b>`upkeep</b> .	* vedligeholde ngt.
	* vedligeholdelse



<b>297</b> The family <b>save ( up ) tokens</b> and <b>vouchers</b> .	* samle ngt.	* værdi- / rabatkupon	* =
They <b>save (up)</b> tokens and vouchers to get things <b>cheaper</b> .	* samle ngt.		* billigere
They are <b>saving</b> vouchers ( <b>up</b> ) to get <b>cheap</b> petrol.	* billig		
Sometimes it says, ' Buy three and <b>save</b> 50p.'	* spare ngt.		
They <b>save on fares</b> and fuel by walking and <b>biking</b> ,	* ... på >	* billetpris	* cykling
and <b>cycling</b> is a <b>sustainable form</b> of <b>transport</b> E/A <ation.	* =	* bæredygtig	* form for > * transport
A <b>bicycle / cycle / bike</b> in the city can be both	* cykel		
a <b>money saver</b> and a <b>time saver</b> .	* pengesparemiddel		* tids-
<b>Going to work</b> or <b>school by bike</b> , you'd wish there were	* ~ cykle til ...		
<b>10</b> more <b>`cycle lanes</b> E/A <b>bicycle lanes / bike lanes</b> ,	* cykelsti		
and lanes broad enough for cycling ( two ) <b>abreast</b> .	* ~ ( to ) ved siden af hinanden		
<b>Biking / eE cycling to work and back</b> is <b>good exercise</b> .	* cykle	* til ngt. og tilbage igen til og fra ngt.	* ... træning give ... motion
Exercise is a good <b>safety valve</b> for the <b>tension</b>	* sikkerhedsventil for ngt.		* anspændelse
that <b>builds `up</b> at work.	* opbygges		
If you bike too fast, you may <b>get a stitch ( in your side )</b> .	* sidesting		
Everybody is encouraged to <b>save (on)</b> energy and water,	* spare ( på ) ngt.		
and use the labour- <b>saving devices</b> with careful <b>consideration</b> ,	* -besparende	* anordning, apparat indretning, mekanisme	* overvejelse hensyntagen
also <b>out of consideration</b> for the environment.	* af hensyn til ngt.		
Doing their best to <b>save (on) heating</b> , electricity and water,	* spare ( på ) >		* opvarmning
<b>20</b> the family <b>save</b> a good deal of money <b>on</b> energy and water.	* spare ngt. på ngt.		
Provided with water- and energy- <b>saving modifications</b> ,	* -besparende		* modifikation tilpasning
new models of <b>dishwashers</b> and <b>washing machines</b> are	* opvaskemaskine		* vaskemaskine
great water and energy <b>savers</b> , and <b>wash ( ) off ingrained dirt</b> .	* sparer	* vaske ngt. af	* indgroet * skidt, snavs / -lejret
The family has a <b>fitted</b> kitchen with <b>space-saving</b>	* indbygget		* pladsbesparende
<b>fitted</b> household machines and other household <b>appliances</b> .	* =		* anordning, indretning apparat, instrument, maskine
A domestic <b>appliance</b> such as s <b>microwave oven</b> can be	* mikrobølgeovn		
a real <b>lifesaver</b> when you are <b>pressed for time</b> .	* et middel, der kan redde		* i tidspres en i en svær situation
The <b>pressure cooker</b> has a <b>safety valve</b> .	* trykkoger		* sikkerhedsventil
The family's <b>sewing machine</b> has <b>saved</b> many clothes	* symaskine		* redde ngt. >
<b>30</b> from being thrown away / <b>discarded</b> .	* fra at -		* ( blive ) kasseret / smidt væk
The kids sometimes have to <b>vacuum clean / Hoover</b> (E).	* støvsuge		
A <b>vacuum cleaner</b> or <b>Hoover</b> (E) cleans the floors,	* støvsuger		
the carpets etc. by <b>hoovering ( ) / sucking `up dirt and dust</b> .	* suge > op	* skidt	* støv
They usually just <b>vacuum / Hoover</b> their own rooms.	* ... et område		
When it's their turn to <b>do the vacuum cleaning / Hoovering</b> ,	* ~ klare >		* støvsugningen
they <b>vacuum / Hoover</b> all the floors and carpets.	* støvsuge ngt.		
The vacuum cleaner <b>whines annoyingly</b> .	* hvine, larme		* irriterende
The <b>whine</b> of the cleaner is disagreeable / unpleasant.	* larm		
A <b>carpet beater</b> is used for <b>beating</b> carpets.	* tæppe>	* banker	* banke ngt.

<b>298</b> The son has to <b>apply for a passport</b> .	* ansøge om >	* pas
So he <b>sends for a passport application</b> . * Look at page 300	* sende brev om / skrive efter ngt.	* pas- * ansøgning
Having <b>completed the attached application form</b> ,	* udfylde >	* vedhæftet * ansøgningsformular / -skema
he <b>returns</b> it in the <b>enclosed reply-paid (E) envelope</b> .	* returnere ngt. * indlagt * modtageren betaler	* konvolut kuvert
Returning an application <b>in good time</b> before the holiday	* i god tid	
season it will <b>save waiting</b> so he returns his application	* spare for ( at ) ngt.	* ventetid
<b>in plenty of / ample time</b> to <b>save</b> him waiting.	* i god tid	* spare ng. for at gøre ngt.
At the same time, he <b>returns</b> a letter <b>wrongly delivered</b> .	* returnere ngt.	* forkert * omdelt ( af-) levere
It's returned <b>unopened</b> with a message on the envelope	* uåbnet	
<b>10</b> saying, ' <b>Addressee unknown – Return to sender.</b> ' adre'si~ -` -`	* adressat * ukendt * retur til >	* afsender (-en)
The <b>return address</b> appears from the back of ê`dres E/A& `adres	* returadresse	
the <b>unopened</b> envelope.	* uåbnet	
The application form <b>is returnable</b> not later than three	* ~ skal returneres	
weeks before the passport is needed.	*	
It takes about ten <b>working days</b> to <b>process</b> an <b>application</b>	* arbejds- * dag	* behandle > * ansøgning
so the <b>turn(a)round</b> for passport applications is at least	* ekspeditionstiden	
two weeks ( a <b>week</b> = Saturday + Sunday + <b>weekdays</b> ).	* uge	* hverdag
Applicants have to <b>collect</b> their passports <b>in person</b> ,	* afhente ngt.	* personligt
and before the <b>release of</b> their passports at the passport office,	* udlevering af ngt.	
<b>20</b> they <b>turn ( ) in</b> /E& <b>hand ( ) in</b> a <b>`lifelike</b> passport photo.	* indlevere ngt.	* vellignende
The officer <b>hands ( ) over</b> the son's passport	* udlevere ngt.	
<b>on</b> the son's <b>production of</b> his <b>birth certificate</b> .	* ved fremvisning af ngt. * fødsels- ( dåbs- )	* attest
<b>Issuing</b> passports / at the <b>issue</b> of passports, the authorities	* udstede ( pas )	* udstedelse
<b>call (up)on</b> the <b>holders</b> to <b>keep</b> their documents <b>safe</b> .	* opfordre ng. * indehaver * opbevare ngt. * sikkert	
The family <b>make sure</b> they <b>put</b> and <b>keep</b> their documents	* anbringe og opbevare ngt.	
<b>in a safe place</b> .	* på et sikkert sted	
Notes eE/eA bills and <b>plastic</b> ( credit cards ) are <b>safely</b> kept	* plastik	* sikkert forsvarligt
in a <b>wallet</b> which is kept in the <b>inner pocket</b> for <b>safekeeping</b> . -` -`	* tegnebog * inderlomme	* sikker opbevaring
The <b>PIN `safeguards</b> the holder <b>against</b> fraud.	* personal identification number	* beskytte ng. mod ngt.
<b>30</b> He must remember to <b>return</b> the wallet <b>to</b> the inner pocket.	* bringe / lægge / sætte ngt. tilbage til ngt.	
The inner pocket a <b>secure place</b> where his wallet is	* sikker	
<b>secure from</b> thieves, and <b>secure against</b> theft.	* i sikkerhed for ng.	* sikret mod ngt.
They know it would <b>be safer to</b> bring some <b>spare</b> clothes	* sikrere	* ekstra
in case of bad weather – <b>better (to be) safe than `sorry</b> .	* man kan ikke være for forsigtig	
Their <b>safest / best bet is</b> to bring <b>`rainproof clothes</b> –	* ... gøre klogt i at	* vandtæt regntøj
<b>it's</b> their <b>safest / best bet</b> .	* det er det sikreste / klogeste	
So they bring their rainproof clothes to <b>be on the safe side</b> .	* på den sikre side	
The mother remembers to bring some <b>`safety pins</b> .	* sikkerhedsnål	

<b>299</b> The father is <b>growing</b> a <b>beard</b> to <b>save shaving</b> so being a <b>bearded</b> man, he won't bring a <b>shaver</b> / an <b>electric razor</b> .	* lade skægget gro få sig et skæg * skægget	* spare / slippe for at - * ( el-) barbermaskine / =	* barbere sig
First the <b>lower part</b> of his <b>face</b> becomes <b>bristly</b> as covered in <b>bristles</b> / <b>stubble</b> before he gets a <b>bristly</b> beard.	* underansigt * kort stift hår * skægstubbe	* ~ fuld af stive hår * ~ stikkende ( skæg )	
Normally, he <b>needs</b> and <b>has</b> a <b>shave</b> every <b>working day</b> .	* behøve / foretage >	* barbering	* hverdag
After their holiday, he'll <b>shave</b> ( ) <b>off</b> his beard by using a <b>cut throat razor</b> or a <b>safety razor</b> with a <b>razor blade</b>	* barbere ( skæg ) af * barberkniv	* barbermaskine	* barberblad
He will use <b>shaving foam</b> / <b>cream</b> , or mixes <b>razor soap</b> with hot water to make thick <b>lather</b> with his <b>shaving brush</b> .	* barber- * sæbeskum	* skum * kræm	* barber- * ~ kost
<b>10</b> When the soap <b>lathers</b> ( in <b>tiny</b> soap <b>bubbles</b> ), he'll <b>lather</b> his <b>unshaven</b> face before <b>shaving</b> ( his face ).	* skumme * indskumme / ~ indsæbe ngt. * god ( sikker ) rejse	* i > * ubarberet	* ( sæbe ) bobble * barbere ( ngt. )
The grandparents ring to wish them a <b>safe journey</b> (E).	* hjemkomst fra ngt.		
They need to know the date of their <b>return from</b> holiday.	* vær sikker på ( ~ husk ) at -		* sikkert
<b>Be sure to</b> ring and let us know you've got back <b>safely</b> .	* =		* kommet tilbage ( ... hjem )
<b>Be sure and</b> call us when you have <b>returned</b> ( <b>home</b> ); have <b>returned</b> ( <b>home</b> ) <b>from</b> the trip;	* kommet tilbage ( / hjem ) fra ngt.		
The mother <b>hunches</b> over the <b>desk</b> , the telephone <b>receiver</b> <b>cradled</b> at her neck.	* trække skuldrene op gøre sig krumrygget * lægge ngt. omsluttet	* arbejds- / skrivebord	* rør
After a call, the <b>receiver</b> is <b>replaced</b> on the <b>cradle</b> .	* røret * lægge ngt tilbge på ngt.		* telefongaffel
<b>20</b> Travelling abroad, having to <b>address</b> people in a <b>foreign language</b> , you need to know the <b>mode</b> / <b>form of address</b> .	* rejse udenlands * sprog	* henvende sig til ng. * ( korrekt ) tiltaleform	* på > * fremmed-
<b>On</b> their <b>return</b> ( <b>from</b> holiday ), they call the grandparents.	* ved ngs. tilbagekomst ( fra ngt. )		
The grandmother is a <b>returnee</b> (eA) from the US.	* hjemvendt efter at have boet i udlandet		
At an early age she had <b>forsaken</b> her native England, and the glamour of city life to live in America.	* måtte forlade ngt.		
When the parents <b>took</b> / <b>had a holiday</b> on their own, they <b>left</b> their kids in <b>safe hands</b> with their grandparents.	* tage / have ferie * i trygge hænder		
So the children were in <b>safe hands</b> .	* =		
They were in <b>the safe hands</b> of their grandparents.	* =		
<b>30</b> They were <b>safe with</b> their <b>grandfather</b> and grandmother.	* =		* bedstefar
As a perfect and beautiful <b>setting</b> for an <b>eventful</b> holiday, Majorca is a <b>shrine</b> for holidays // <b>for</b> / <b>to</b> holidaymakers.	* område for ngt. * kultsted for ng. / ngt.		* oplevelsesrig
Grandparents usually <b>recommend</b> a lot of <b>precautions</b> but some of these <b>recommendations</b> can <b>safely</b> be ignored.	* anbefale * anbefaling	* forsigtighedsregel	* trygt roligt
<b>Taking</b> all reasonable <b>precautions</b> to protect themselves and their family, the parents have <b>taken</b> the <b>precaution</b> of taking out insurance providing adequate accident cover.	* tage ( alle rimelige ) forholdsregler for at - * tage den forholdsregel at - *		
They all use their safety belts <b>as a safety precaution</b> : as a wise / sensible <b>precaution</b> against <b>devastating</b> injuries.	* som sikkerhedsforanstaltning * ( klog ) ... mod ngt.		* voldsomme ( kvæstelser )

ad 201 ) When a team is **playing on its own ground**,  
it is **playing a home match / game**

A team that **plays at home** is called the home team.

An opposing team that **plays away** is a visiting team.

A visiting team **plays an away match / game**.

ad 205 ) Women in particular **feel trapped** by the **mesh / web**  
of traditional **concepts of** gender.

ad 235 ) The wind **whips** the clouds **across** the sky.  
so the clouds **whip across** the sky.

A 50 mile an hour wind **whips** the waves.

**Sea spray whips** against the rowers' faces.

ad 256 ) It is **down / up to** the members to do the jobs  
but it may **be up to** them when exactly to do a job.

ad 265 ) If a dress **fastens (up) / does up / buttons (up)**  
**at the front**, it's easy **do up** E/A **button** the / one's **buttons**,  
and **undo** E/A **unbutton** the / one's **buttons**

ad 271 ) Having **ruffled up** its **feathers**, the **rooster** /E& **crow**  
in the **hen / poultry house crows**, 'cock-a-doodle-doo.'

ad 285 ) Insonn managed to **maintain / sustain** everybody's  
**interest** until the end of his speech.

ad 292 ) People **approach** the bank **for** a loan.

They **approach** the bank **about** ( taking out ) a loan.

ad 293 ) So as the car is **under warranty** for two years  
which means that there's a **warrant for** services,  
**repair** or **replacement**.

ad 298 ) He put his application in an envelope,  
and writes the **addressee's** name and address on the front,  
and his own name and address on the back.

As he doesn't remember the **postage rates**  
he checks the **postage on** letters.

Having put a ( **postage** ) **stamp** on the envelope  
**in the top right-hand corner**,  
he **posts ( off )** E/A **mails** the letter ( **to** the addressee )  
by putting it into a **postbox / letter box** EE /A a **mailbox**.

The passport office will **post** E/A **mail** him an application  
form **asap**.

Some people **have** their **post** E/A **mail delivered to**  
a **letter box** E/A **mailbox** outside their house.

\* spille hjemme

\* spille hjemmekamp

\* spille hjemme

\* spille ude

\* spille udekamp

\* føle sig > fanget ( som i en fælde )

\* ide / opfattelse om ngt.

\* piske ngt. ( afsted ) over ngt.

\* piske ( afsted ) over ngt.

\* piske ngt.

\* ~ skumsprøjt

\* piske imod ngt.

\* ~ være ngs. ansvar / & pligt at -

\* være op til ng., ~ være ngs. egen beslutning

\* lukkes / = / knappes til

\* foran

\* ~ knappe knapperne / sine knapper

\* ~ knappe knapperne op / knappe sine knapper op

\* ~ puste fjerene op

\* hanen >

\* hønsehus

\* galler >

\* kykliky

\* opretholde >

\* interesse

\* henvende sig til ng. for ngt

\* ... for ( at - ) ngt.

\* under >

\* skriftlig garanti

\* garanti for ngt.

\* reparation

\* ombytning

\*

\* adressat

\*

\* post-

\* takst

\* porto

\* på ngt.

\* ( post- ) frimærke

\* i > \* øverste højre

\* hjørne

\* poste ( brev )

\* til ng.

\* postkasse

\* ~ sende ng. ngt

\* as soon as possible

\* få >

\* post

\* afleveret til >

\* postkasse

